## Mirror Symmetry

Lectures: Professor Bernd Siebert

Fall 2019; Notes by: Jackson Van Dyke; All errors introduced are my own.

## Contents

Overview of mirror symmetry ..... 7

1. Enumerative mirror symmetry ..... 7
1.1. Topological twists ..... 8
1.2. Useful calculations ..... 8
1.3. Homological mirror symmetry ..... 9
1.4. Proving numerical mirror symmetry ..... 9
1.5. Proving HMS ..... 9
1.6. Modern state ..... 9
1.7. Plan for the class ..... 9
Chapter 1. Mirror symmetry for the quintic ..... 10
2. The quintic threefold, its mirror, and COGP ..... 10
3. Quintic 3 -folds ..... 10
2.1. Computation of $H^{1}\left(\Theta_{X}\right)$ ..... 10
4. Hodge diamond ..... 12
3.1. Dolbeault cohomology ..... 12
3.2. Hodge diamond ..... 13
3.3. Lefschetz theorem on $(1,1)$-classes ..... 14
3.4. Hard Lefschetz theorem ..... 14
5. Lefschetz hyperplane theorem ..... 14
6. The mirror quintic ..... 15
5.1. Construction ..... 15
5.2. Mirror families ..... 16
7. Yukawa couplings ..... 17
6.1. A-model ..... 17
6.2. B-model ..... 17
6.3. Mirror symmetry ..... 17
6.4. Computation of the periods ..... 18
8. Holomorphic 3-form ..... 18
9. Normalization ..... 19
10. Further periods ..... 19
9.1. Derivation of the equation ..... 20
9.2. Griffiths' reduction of pole order ..... 20
11. Canonical coordinate/mirror map ..... 21
12. Yukawa coupling ..... 22
11.1. Griffiths-transversality ..... 22
Chapter 2. Stacks ..... 24
13. Moduli spaces ..... 24
1.1. The problem of moduli for curves ..... 25
14. Stacks ..... 26
2.1. Morphisms of groupoids ..... 28
2.2. Fibre products and cartesian diagrams ..... 30
2.3. Definition of stacks ..... 31
Etale topology ..... 32
2.4. Examples of stacks ..... 33
2.5. Representable morphisms ..... 34
2.6. Definition of DM-stack ..... 35
Separatedness of stacks ..... 36
A criterion for an Artin stack to be DM ..... 36
15. Stable curves ..... 36
3.1. $\overline{\mathcal{M}_{g}}$ is a DM-stack ..... 37
3.2. Further properties ..... 39
Chapter 3. Gromov-Witten theory and virtual techniques ..... 42
16. Stable maps ..... 42
Motivation ..... 42
17. GW-invariants for hypersurfaces, $g=0$ ..... 46
18. Digression on intersection theory ..... 47
Proper push-forward and flat pull-back ..... 47
Excision ..... 48
Weil divisors ..... 48
Cartier divisors ..... 48
First Chern class and Segre classes ..... 49
Chern classes ..... 50
Gysin pullback ..... 50
19. Obstruction theories and VFC ..... 52
4.1. The idea ..... 52
4.2. Digression on the cotangent complex ..... 52
4.3. Behrend-Fantechi definition ..... 54
4.4. Obstruction theory for GW-theory ..... 56
4.5. GW-invariants ..... 57
4.6. Deformation invariance of GW ..... 58
Chapter 4. Toric geometry ..... 59
20. Monoids and cones ..... 59
21. Monoid rings ..... 60
22. Rational polyhedral cones and the Lemma of Gordan ..... 60
23. Facts from convex geometry ..... 60
24. Affine toric varieties ..... 61
25. $k$-rational points ..... 62
26. Toric open subschemes ..... 63
27. Rational functions, dimension and normality ..... 63
28. Toric strata ..... 64
29. Globalize: fans ..... 65
30. Example: $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ ..... 66
31. $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{d}$ as a toric variety ..... 68
32. Toric strata ..... 68
33. Quasi-compactness ..... 69
34. Morphisms of fans ..... 70
35. Examples ..... 70
36. Properties of toric morphisms ..... 73
37. The category of toric varieties ..... 73
38. Polytopes and polyhedra ..... 73
39. Toric varieties from polyhedra ..... 75
40. Weil divisors on toric varieties ..... 78
41. $\quad \mathrm{Cl}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)$ ..... 79
42. Cartier divisors on toric varieties ..... 79
43. $\operatorname{Pic}\left(X_{\Sigma}\right)$ ..... 79
44. Ample toric divisors ..... 80
Chapter 5. Toric degenerations and mirror symmetry ..... 81
45. The Batyrev mirror construction ..... 81
1.1. Reflexive polytopes ..... 81
1.2. Fano toric varieties ..... 82
1.3. CY hypersurfaces in the smooth case ..... 82
1.4. (Partial) Desingularization ..... 82
1.5. Batyrev hypersurface mirrors ..... 83
1.6. Mirror theorems ..... 83
46. Mumford type toric degenerations ..... 84
2.1. Construction ..... 84
2.2. Polytope picture ..... 85
2.3. Mirror symmetry for Mumford degenerations ..... 85
2.4. Toric degenerations ..... 86
47. Towards GS-type toric degenerations ..... 86
3.1. The Dwork pencil and $A_{1}$-singularities ..... 86
3.2. Key example: one $A_{1}$ singularity ..... 87
48. Reconstruction ..... 87
4.1. Explanation without scattering ..... 88
49. Wall structures ..... 89
5.1. Walls ..... 89
5.2. Wall crossing ..... 90
5.3. Construction of $\mathcal{X}^{\circ}=\mathcal{X} \backslash \operatorname{Codim} 2$ ..... 91
5.4. Consistency in all codimensions/broken lines ..... 92
5.5. Canonical functions - generalized theta functions ..... 92
5.6. Construction of $\mathcal{X} \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$ ..... 92
5.7. Construction of consistent wall structures ..... 93
50. Intrinsic mirror map ..... 93
Chapter 6. A peek into Homological Mirror Symmetry ..... 95
51. Overview ..... 95
1.1. $\quad A$ and $B$-models ..... 96
1.2. Algebraic structure ..... 97
1.3. The Fukaya category ..... 99
1.4. The "derived" Fukaya category ..... 100
1.5. Homological mirror symmetry ..... 100
52. $D_{d g}^{b}(X)$ and the HPL ..... 100
2.1. Cech model of $D^{b}(X)$ ..... 100
2.2. The HPL ..... 101
53. Polishchuk's rigidiy theorem ..... 103
3.1. Reducing to the algebra $A_{L}$ ..... 103
3.2. $A_{\infty}$ structures on $A_{L}$ ..... 103
3.3. $\quad A_{\infty}$-structures and Hochschild cocycles ..... 103
3.4. Our situation ..... 104
3.5. The standard (co-)bar resolution and $\mathrm{HH}^{*}$ ..... 104
3.6. Proof of the rigidity theorem ..... 105
Bibliography ..... 107

## Overview of mirror symmetry

The course is topics in algebraic geometry. We will be doing some sort of mirror symmetry. We will start with some historical overview.

Lecture 1, August 29, 2019

## 1. Enumerative mirror symmetry

Let $X$ be a CY manifold. In particular we will focus on CY 3-folds. This means $K_{X}=\operatorname{det} T_{X}^{*} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{X}$ is trivial as a holomorphic line bundle. Typically this means we want $b_{1}=0$ and irreducible.

Example 0.1 (Quartic in $\mathbb{P}^{4}$ ). Take $f \in \mathbb{C}\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{4}\right]$ homogeneous of degree 5 . If it is sufficiently general, the zero locus is smooth inside $\mathbb{P}^{4}$ and is an example of a CY three-fold.

We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{I} /\left.\mathcal{I}^{2} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X} \rightarrow 0 \tag{0.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{I}=(f) \subset \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}$. We also have that $\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2}=\mathcal{I} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}} \mathcal{O}_{X}$ is an invertible sheaf so this first map sends $f \mapsto d f$. This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.K_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X}=\left.\operatorname{det} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X}=\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2} \otimes K_{X} \tag{0.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}=\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(-5) \tag{0.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\mathcal{I} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}$ which has a section with poles of order 5 . The point is we can make $f$ into a five by dividing by $x_{0}^{5}$, so we have that, as an abstract sheaf,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{I} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(-5) \tag{0.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{X}(-5) \tag{0.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we can just take the tensor product to get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.K_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{X}(-5) \tag{0.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

so $K_{X} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{X}$ must be trivial.
Now we want to produce a string theory out of this. This is a very delicate process. There are things called $I I A(X)$ and $I I B(X)$ theories. These are the ones relevant in mirror symmetry. These come from the super-symmetric $\sigma$-models with target some 10 -dimensional space ${ }^{0.1} \mathbb{R}^{1,3} \times X$. These are the so-called super conformal field theories $S C F T_{A}(X)$ and $S C F T_{B}(X)$. These are different theories which produce observables, e.g. the Hodge number of $X$ can be computed from these theories. In particular we can compute $h_{1,1}(X)$ and $h_{2,1}(X)$ which correspond to some physical variables. On the $B$-side we make the same computation but get $h_{2,1}(X)$ and $h_{1,1}(X)$. Then we postulate that there is some other $X^{\prime}$

[^0]where these are not flipped. In particular the observation is, for very specific $X$, we can find a CY Y with
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
S C F T_{A}(X)=S C F T_{B}(Y) \quad S C F T_{B}(X)=S C F T_{A}(Y) \tag{0.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

Somehow then the idea is that if this is really a model for string theory, we should really be swapping

$$
\begin{equation*}
I I A(X) "={ }^{\prime \prime} I I B(X) \quad I I B(X) "={ }^{\prime \prime} I I A(Y) \tag{0.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

But this might be a bit much to ask.
1.1. Topological twists. There is something called a topologically twisted $\sigma$-model introduced by Witten in 1988. This produces a completely different theory. We get two theories, one called $A(X)$, and one $B(X)$.

Warning 0.1. As it turns out, $A(X)$ ends up computing things in certain limits of the $I I B(X)$ theory.

REmARK 0.1. A priori these are unrelated to $S C F T_{A}(X)$ and $S C F T_{B}(X)$.
As it turns out, if we have $S C F T_{A}(X)=S C F T_{B}(Y)$, then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(X)=B(Y) \quad B(X)=A(Y) \tag{0.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

$A(X)$ and $B(X)$ compute certain limits, called Yukawa-couplings, for $S C F T_{B}(Y)$ and $S C F T_{A}(X)$.

Note that by this twisting procedure $A(X)$ sees $(X, \omega)$ (where $\omega$ is the Kähler form) only as a symplectic manifold, and $B(X)$ depends only on the complex manifold $(X, I)$.
1.2. Useful calculations. The reason people really got excited about mirror symmetry is that it helps us make calculations we couldn't make before.

In [4] the Yukawa couplings for the quintic and the mirror quintic were computed. In particular they computed $F_{B}$ of the mirror quintic $Y_{t}$, and claimed this is in fact equal to $F_{A}$ of the quintic. Geometrically $F_{A}$ has to do with counts of (genus 0 ) holomorphic curves. $F_{B}$ has to do with period integrals

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\alpha} \Omega_{Y_{t}}=F_{B}(t) \tag{0.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\alpha \in H_{3}\left(Y_{t}\right)$. So they predicted some counts, then someone computed it directly and they agreed.

Warning 0.2 . This $\Omega_{Y_{t}}$ is only defined up to scale so really the case is that

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{B}(t)=\exp \left(\int_{\alpha_{1}} \Omega_{Y_{t}} / \int_{\alpha_{0}} \Omega_{Y_{t}}\right) \tag{0.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\alpha_{i} \in H_{3}\left(Y_{t}\right)$.
Then Morrison/Deligne in 1992 described $F_{B}(Y)$ in terms of Hodge theory/more parameters for CY moduli. This is when Gromov-Witten theory entered the scene in 1993 to make $F_{A}(X)$ precise. So at least we had a mathematical statement.
1.3. Homological mirror symmetry. In 1994 Kontsevich gave his legendary ICM talk. This is where homological mirror symmetry took off. He said that as mathematicians we don't really know SCFTs. But what should be true is really:

$$
\begin{equation*}
D \operatorname{Fuk}(X)=D^{b}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\right) \tag{0.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is a formulation, not an explanation.
Professor Siebert would like to convince us of a procedure to construct mirror pairs.
1.4. Proving numerical mirror symmetry. In 1996 Givental gave a proof that in the case of hypersurfaces $F_{A}$ really is $F_{B}$ of the mirror. This was somehow a computation showing that the sides do in fact agree. This is not very satisfying to Professor Siebert. In 1997 Lian, Liu, and Yan proved it more generally.
1.5. Proving HMS. In 2003 Paul Seidel proved HMS for the quartic in $\mathbb{P}^{3}$. Essentially he shows that both sides have enough rigidity to do a very minimal computation. This is also not very satisfying to Professor Siebert. It was then proved in 2011 by N. Sheridan for all CY hypersurfaces.
1.6. Modern state. There are many other manifestations of mirror symmetry. As it turns out even geometric Langlands can be viewed as some form of mirror symmetry.

As for HMS, some symplectic people are trying to prove this for so-called SYZ fibered symplectic manifolds with a rigid space as the mirror.

Then there are intrinsic constructions, things which Professor Siebert has worked on (with Mark Gross) with many applications. The idea is to use mirror symmetry as a tool in mathematics rather than just a phenomenon in physics. The point is one has to find a way of producing mirrors.

This entire story is genus 0 , what physicists would call tree-level. There is also a higher genus case. From the representation theory side this has something to do with quantum groups. This is called second quantized mirror symmetry. ${ }^{0.2}$ There is an entire field called topological recursion related to this.

### 1.7. Plan for the class.

(1) part of the COGP computation (periods)
(2) Gromov-Witten theory, virtual fundamental class/moduli stacks
(3) toric degenerations and mirror constructions ${ }^{0.3}$
(4) One strategy for proving HMS is to compute homogeneous coordinate rings of both sides. Polishchuk has shown that this ring determines $D^{b}\left(\mathcal{O}_{Y}\right)$. It would be nice to make the analogous symplectic calculation because this would be a very sneaky proof of HMS.
(5) Higher genus: Donaldson-Thomas invariants play some sort of unclear role in MS because they will have something to do with the higher genus story. One can make these computations using "crystal melting". This is some kind of statistical mechanics.

[^1]
## CHAPTER 1

## Mirror symmetry for the quintic

## 1. The quintic threefold, its mirror, and COGP

Take some quintic CY in $\mathbb{P}^{4}$, i.e. $V(f) \subset \mathbb{P}^{4}$ for some homogeneous degree $5 f$. First let's do a dimension count for homogeneous polynomials in $x_{0}, \ldots, x_{4}$ of degree 5 . This is just drawing with replacement, so we have

$$
\begin{array}{rlr}
x_{0}^{2} x_{2} & \leftrightarrow & \| \cdot \cdot \mid \\
x_{0} x_{1}^{2} x_{2} & \leftrightarrow & |\cdot \| \cdot| \tag{1.2}
\end{array}
$$

and we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\binom{9}{5}=126 \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{C}}\left\{Z(f) \subset \mathbb{P}^{4}\right\}=126-1=125 \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we mod out by PGL (5), which is of dimension $5 \cdot 5-1=24$. So we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \underbrace{\mathcal{M}_{5}}_{\text {moduli space of quintics }}=101 \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Indeed: for a projective CY manifold $X$, the moduli space of CY manifolds deformation equivalent to $X$ is a smooth orbifold of complex dimension $h^{1}\left(\Theta_{X}\right)$, where $\Theta_{X}$ is the holomorphic tangent bundle. We will compute this number as an exercise next time. For $V(5) \subset \mathbb{P}^{4}$ this is 101 .

Lecture 2;
September 3, 2019

## 2. Quintic 3-folds

We will be looking at quintic 3 -folds $V(5) \subset \mathbb{P}^{4}$ given by $Z(f)$ for some homogeneous degree 5 polynomial.

Theorem 1.1. For $X$ a projective $C Y$ manifold then the moduli space of $C Y$ deformationequivalent to $X$ is a smooth space of dimension $h^{1}\left(\Theta_{X}\right)$.

By an elementary argument we saw that $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}_{V(5)}=101$.
2.1. Computation of $H^{1}\left(\Theta_{X}\right)$. We will compute in the case $X=V(5) \subset \mathbb{P}^{4}$. We start with the Euler sequence. We have $\mathbb{P}^{4}=\operatorname{Proj} \mathbb{C}\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{4}\right]$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{i} \partial_{x_{i}}=x_{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}} \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

are well-define logarithmic vector fields. Then the sequence is

$$
\begin{gather*}
0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(1)^{\oplus 5} \longrightarrow \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}} \longrightarrow 0 \\
1 \longmapsto e_{i}  \tag{1.7}\\
e_{i} \longmapsto x_{i} \partial_{x_{i}}
\end{gather*}
$$

Then we have the conormal sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{I} /\left.\mathcal{I}^{2} \longrightarrow \Omega_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}^{1}\right|_{X} \xrightarrow{\text { res }_{x}} \Omega_{X}^{1} \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{I}$ is the ideal sheaf of $X$. This is dual to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.0 \longrightarrow \Theta_{X} \longrightarrow \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X} \longrightarrow N_{X / \mathbb{P}^{4}} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(5) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2}$ can be computed because $\mathcal{I} \simeq \mathcal{O}(-5)$. The restriction sequences are:

$$
\begin{gather*}
0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(-5) \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X} \longrightarrow 0  \tag{1.10}\\
\left.0 \longrightarrow \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(-5) \longrightarrow \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}} \longrightarrow \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X} \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.11}
\end{gather*}
$$

Now (1.9) gives us


For $H^{1}\left(\left.\Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X}\right),(1.11)$ give us:

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{1}\left(\Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right) \longrightarrow H^{1}\left(\left.\Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X}\right) \longrightarrow H^{2}\left(\Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(-5)\right) \tag{1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Euler sequence gives us:

then we can tensor the Euler sequence with $\mathcal{O}(-5)$ to get


For $H^{0}\left(\left.\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}(5)\right|_{X}\right)$ we can tensor (1.10) with $\mathcal{O}(5)$ to get


Now for $H^{0}\left(\left.\Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{4}}\right|_{X}\right)$ we have that (1.11) gives us


Then the result is that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{1}\left(\Theta_{X}\right)=101 \tag{1.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 3. Hodge diamond

3.1. Dolbeault cohomology. Let $X$ be a compact Kähler manifold. Recall we have the Dolbeault cohomology $H_{\bar{\partial}}^{i, j}$ is the cohomology of the sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{A}^{i, j} \xrightarrow{\bar{b}} \mathcal{A}^{i, j+1} \tag{1.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where this looks like

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum h_{\mu \nu} d z_{\mu_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge d z_{\mu_{i}} \wedge d \bar{z}_{\nu_{1}} \wedge \ldots \wedge d \bar{z}_{\nu_{j}} \tag{1.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $h_{\mu \nu} \in \mathcal{C}^{\infty}$.
Then we have the following facts:
(1) We have a canonical isomorphism from the Dolbeault cohomology

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{\bar{\partial}}^{i, j}=H^{j}\left(X, \Omega_{X}^{i}\right)=\overline{H_{\bar{\partial}}^{j, i}} \tag{1.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} H_{\bar{\partial}}^{i, j}=h_{i j}=h_{j i} \tag{1.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{\bar{\partial}}^{n-i, n-j}=H^{n-j}\left(X, \Omega_{X}^{n-i}\right)={ }^{1.1} H^{j}\left(X, K_{X} \otimes\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}^{n-i}\right)^{*}\right)^{*} H_{\bar{\partial}}^{i, j} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

which, in particular, means $h_{i j}=h_{n-i, n-j}$.
(3)

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{k}(X, \mathbb{C})=H_{d R}^{k}(X)=\bigoplus_{i+j=k} H_{\bar{\partial}}^{i, j} \tag{1.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Recall $b_{i}=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{C}} H^{k}(X, \mathbb{C})$. For CY $n$-folds, $b_{1}=0$ by the definition of CY. This implies $h_{10}=h_{01}=0$. Moreover

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{n, 0}=H^{0}(X, \underbrace{K_{X}}_{\mathcal{O}_{X}}) \simeq \mathbb{C} \tag{1.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^2]This implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{n, 0}=h_{0, n}=1 \tag{1.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

We say a CY is irreducible if the universal cover $\tilde{X} \rightarrow X$ is not a nontrivial product of CY. This is equivalent to $H^{k, 0}=0$ for $k=1, \ldots, n-1$.

Counterexample 1. The product $K 3 \times K 3$ is not irreducible.
3.2. Hodge diamond. The hodge diamond is the following:

|  |  |  | $h_{33}$ |  |  |  | $\leftarrow H^{6}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $h_{23}$ |  | $h_{32}$ |  |  | $\leftarrow H^{5}$ |
|  | $h_{13}$ |  | $h_{22}$ |  | $h_{31}$ |  | : |
| $h_{01}$ |  | $h_{12}$ |  | $h_{21}$ |  | $h_{30}$ |  |
|  | $h_{02}$ |  | $h_{11}$ |  | $h_{20}$ |  |  |
|  |  | $h_{01}$ |  | $h_{10}$ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | $h_{00}$ |  |  |  |  |

The only interesting part is the center:


1
since

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{1}\left(\Theta_{X}\right)=H^{1}(\Theta_{X} \otimes \underbrace{K_{X}}_{\mathcal{O}_{X}})=H^{1}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}^{n-1}\right)=H^{n-1,1} \tag{1.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

So the question is reduced to making these calculations. In the $V(5)$ case $h_{21}=101$ as we saw.
3.3. Lefschetz theorem on $(1,1)$-classes. Now we work at the generality of compact Kähler manifolds. The Néron-Severi group $N S(X)$, is the preimage of $H^{1,1}$ under $H^{2}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow H^{2}(X, \mathbb{C})$. So somehow morally $N S(X)=H^{2}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \cap H^{1,1}$. Now we have the exponential sequence of abelian sheaves:

$$
\begin{gather*}
1 \longrightarrow \underline{\mathbb{Z}} \xrightarrow{\cdot 2 \pi i} \mathcal{O}_{X} \xrightarrow{\text { exp }} \mathcal{O}_{X}^{\times} \longrightarrow 1  \tag{1.30}\\
H^{1}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow H^{1}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right) \longrightarrow H^{1}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}^{\times}\right) \rightarrow H^{2}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow H^{2}\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right) \\
\| \\
H^{0,1}
\end{gather*} \quad \begin{aligned}
& \| \\
&
\end{aligned}
$$

So $c_{1}(\operatorname{Pic}(X))=N S(X)$.
Now we know how to compute $\operatorname{Pic}(X)$ for CY $n$-folds. In particular, as long as $n \geq 3$, $h_{11}=\operatorname{rank}_{\mathbb{Z}} N S(X)$ and $\operatorname{Pic}(X) \simeq N S(X)$ since $\operatorname{Pic}^{0}(X)=0$ in the CY case.
3.4. Hard Lefschetz theorem. Let $X \subset \mathbb{P}^{n}$ be a Kähler manifold. This tells us that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{k}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}, \mathbb{Z}\right) \rightarrow H^{k}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \tag{1.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an isomorphism for $k<n-1=\operatorname{dim} X$ and surjective for $k=n-1$.
Now for a CY 3-fold we have $0=H^{1}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}, \mathbb{Z}\right)=H^{1}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ and $H^{2}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}, \mathbb{Z}\right) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow$ $H^{2}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ which means $N S(X) \simeq \mathbb{Z}$. This is generated by the hyperplane class $c_{1}(\mathcal{O}(1))$ and then restricting to $X$ gives the ample line bundle on $X$ and this generates the group.

So today we learned that the interesting part of the diamond in the quintic case looks like
$101 \quad 101$

1
and then as it turns out, the mirror quintic will look like
101
$1 \quad 1$
101
so we have a huge Picard group.
Lecture 3;
September 5, 2019

## 4. Lefschetz hyperplane theorem

This is an addendum to last lecture. Let $X \subset \mathbb{P}^{n}$ be a hypersurface. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{k}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}, \mathbb{Z}\right) \xrightarrow{\text { res }} H^{k}(X, \mathbb{Z}) \tag{1.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an isomorphism for $k<n-1$ and surjective for $k=n-1$.

## 5. The mirror quintic

We should have mirrored Hodge numbers. Recall the interesting part of the Hodge diamond for the original quintic is
$101 \quad 101$

1
and then the mirror diamond should be:
101
1 .
101
So $h_{21}(Y)=1$, i.e. it has a one-dimensional moduli space, but $h_{11}(Y)=101$ so it has a big Pic $(Y)$.
5.1. Construction. This is physically motivated by the orbifold of the "minimal CFT" related to the Fermat quintic, i.e. the one given by $x_{0}^{5}+\ldots+x_{4}^{5}=0 .(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{5}$ acts diagonally on $\mathbb{P}^{4}$. This gives an effective action of $(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{4}=(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{5} /(\mathbb{Z} / 5)$ since one copy of $\mathbb{Z} / 5$ acts trivially. Now we take the finite quotient

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{Y}=X /(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{4} \tag{1.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

The action is not free, so this is not a manifold, i.e. it has some orbifold singularities. ( $X$ is smooth by Jacobi criterion.) The stabilizer $G_{Y} \subset(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{4}$ is nontrivial. There are two cases:

- $x_{i}=x_{j}=0(i \neq j)$, in which case $G_{Y} \simeq \mathbb{Z} / 5$. This gives quintic curves $\tilde{C}_{i j}=$ $Z\left(x_{i}, x_{j}\right) \subset X$. The local action is given by $\zeta\left(z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}\right)=\left(\zeta z_{1}, \zeta^{-1} z_{2}, z_{3}\right)$. This gives rise to the singularity given by $u v=w^{5}$, the $A_{4}$ singularity in $\mathbb{C}^{3}$ (with coordinates $u, v, w)$.
- $x_{i}=x_{j}=x_{k}=0(i, j, k$ pairwise disjoint $)$, where we get $G_{Y} \simeq(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{2}$. This gives us

$$
\tilde{P}_{i, j, k} \rightarrow P_{i j k} \in \bar{Y}
$$

Now the local action looks like

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\zeta, \xi) \cdot\left(z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}\right)=\left(\zeta \xi z_{1}, \zeta^{-1} z_{2}, \xi^{-1} z_{3}\right) \tag{1.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 1.1. Inside $\bar{Y}$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{01}=Z\left(x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}^{5}+x_{3}^{5}+x_{4}^{5}\right) /(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{3} \simeq Z(u+v+w) \simeq \mathbb{P}^{1} \subset \mathbb{P}^{2} \tag{1.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any $C_{i j}$ looks like a $\mathbb{P}^{1}$.
We want to blow these singularities up locally, but this is delicate if we want to stay in the world of projective algebraic varieties, i.e. we might just not have an ample line bundle after blowing up. So we have to prove something extra.

Proposition 1.2. There exists a projective resolution $Y \rightarrow \bar{Y}$.

This is done most efficiently by toric methods, but can be done by hand.
Let's count the independent exceptional divisors in $T$. We have 4 over each $C_{i j}$ and 6 over each $P_{i j k}$. So we have 40 from the $C_{i j}$ and 60 from the $P_{i j k}$ and we have 100 in total. Together with the hyperplane class they span the $H^{2}$.

Proposition 1.3. $h_{11}(Y)=101, h_{21}(Y)=1$.
The proof was done directly by S.S. Roan and done by by toric methods by Batyrev.
5.2. Mirror families. This $\bmod G$ construction generalizes to what is called the "Dwork family". In particular we have $X_{\psi}=V\left(f_{\psi}\right)$ where

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{\psi}=x_{0}^{5}+\ldots+x_{4}^{5}-5 \psi x_{0} x_{1} \ldots x_{4} \tag{1.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\psi$ is a complex parameter. So we have

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{4}=\left\{\left(\zeta_{0}, \ldots, \zeta_{4}\right) \mid \prod \zeta_{i}=1\right\} & \subset(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{5} \\
\downarrow & \downarrow  \tag{1.43}\\
G=(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{3} & (\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{4}
\end{array}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
X_{\psi}= & Z\left(f_{\psi}\right) \\
& \downarrow /(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{3}  \tag{1.44}\\
\bar{Y}_{\psi} \longleftarrow & Y_{\psi}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that $Y \psi \simeq Y_{\zeta \psi}$ for $\zeta^{5}=1$. Then we have
where $z:=(5 \psi)^{-5}$. This is a family of CY 3-folds which are smooth for $z \neq 0, \infty$.
The special fibers are as follows.

- $z=0: x_{0} \ldots x_{4}=0$ implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y_{z=0} \simeq \bigcup_{5} \mathbb{P}^{3} \subset \mathbb{P}^{4} \tag{1.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a union of coordinate hyperplanes.

- $z=5^{-5}$, i.e. $\psi=1$. This corresponds to one 3-fold $A_{1}$ singularity. $X_{1}$ has 125 three dimensional $A_{1}$-singularities. Which locally look like $x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}+w^{2}=0$. They all lie in one $(\mathbb{Z} / 5)^{3}$-orbit. $Y_{5^{-1}}$ has one three dimensional $A_{1}$ singularity sometimes called the "conifold".
- $z=\infty$, i.e. $\psi=0$ : this is the Fermat quintic. This has an additional $\mathbb{Z} / 5$ symmetry because we drop the condition that the product of the $x_{i}$ has to be 1 . So this is really an orbifold point.
Now, at least from a physics point of view we are done. ${ }^{1.2}$

[^3]
## 6. Yukawa couplings

6.1. A-model. The $A$-model (symplectic) will deal with the quintic. So we have $H^{2}(X, \mathbb{Z})=\mathbb{Z} \cdot h$ for $h=P D$ (hyperplane). Then the Yukawa coupling is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle h, h, h\rangle_{A}=\sum_{d \in \mathbb{N}} N_{d} d^{3} q^{d} \tag{1.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

At this point (historically) it was not clear what the $N_{d}$ actually were because GromovWitten theory was sort of being developed in parallel. Nowadays we know that the $N_{d}$ are Gromov-Witten (GW) counts of rational curves $(g=0)$ of degree $d$. If we write $n_{d}$ for the primitive counts, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
5+\sum_{d>0} d^{3} n_{d} \underbrace{\frac{q^{d}}{1-q^{d}}}_{\text {multiple cover of } \operatorname{deg} d \text { curves }} \in \mathbb{Q} \llbracket q \rrbracket \tag{1.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

6.2. B-model. Now we consider the mirror quintic $Y_{z}, z=(5 \psi)^{-5}$. Now the Yukawa coupling is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\partial_{z}, \partial_{z}, \partial_{z}\right\rangle_{B}:=\int_{Y_{z}} \Omega^{\nu}(z) \wedge \partial_{z}^{3} \Omega^{\nu}(z) \tag{1.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Omega^{\nu}$ is a "normalized" holomorphic volume form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\beta_{0}} \Omega^{\nu}=\text { constant } \tag{1.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\beta_{0} \in H_{2}(Y, \mathbb{Z})$.
We need some kind of mirror to the vector field $h$ on the moduli space of symplectic structures. What we really want is actually the exponentiated thing $e^{2 \pi i h}$. So as it turns out on this side of mirror symmetry this looks like $\partial / \partial w$ which corresponds to a vector field on the complex moduli space of $Y$.

It turns out

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=\int_{\beta_{1}} \Omega^{\nu}(z) \tag{1.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\beta_{1} \in H_{3}(Y, \mathbb{Z})$.
6.3. Mirror symmetry. Now the actual statement of mirror symmetry is that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\langle h, h, h\rangle_{A}=\left\langle\partial_{z}, \partial_{z}, \partial_{z}\right\rangle_{B} \tag{1.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $q=e^{2 \pi i w(z)}\left(w=c \cdot z+\mathcal{O}\left(z^{2}\right)\right)$.
So now we have to:
(1) write down the holomorphic 3 form (not too bad)
(2) do the normalization period integral (not too bad)
(3) computing this second integral (more bad)
(4) computing the Yukawa coupling.
6.4. Computation of the periods. There is an account of this in lecture notes by Mark Gross (Nordfjordeid). Recall we have:

$$
\begin{array}{r}
Y_{\psi}  \tag{1.53}\\
X_{\psi} \xrightarrow{/ G} \bar{Y}_{\psi} \\
\downarrow
\end{array} .
$$

We know $H_{3}\left(Y_{\psi}, \mathbb{Z}\right) \simeq \mathbb{Z}^{4}$. Near $\psi=\infty$ (large complex structure limit) we have a vanishing cycle.

This looks like Professor Siebert's favorite picture of a degeneration. Consider $z w=t$. At $t=0$ this looks like two disks meeting at a point. For $t \neq 0$ this looks like a cylinder. But now if we do a Dehn twist, we see that there is an $S^{1}$ which gets collapsed in this degeneration. A similar story holds in higher dimension.

In particular, our vanishing cycle looks like $\beta_{0}=T^{3}$. Locally

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{1} \ldots u_{4}=z, \beta_{0}=\left\{\left|u_{1}\right|=\ldots=\left|u_{4}\right|=|z|^{1 / 4}, \operatorname{Arg} u_{1} \ldots u_{4}=0\right\} \tag{1.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $u_{i}$ are holomorphic coordinates.
If we lift to $X_{\psi}$ we get an explicit three-torus
$T=\left\{\left|x_{0}\right|=\left|x_{1}\right|=\left|x_{2}\right|=\delta \ll 1, x_{3}=x_{3}\left(x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}\right)\right.$ soln of $\left.f_{\psi}\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}, 1\right)=0, \exists!\xrightarrow{z \rightarrow 0} 0\right\}$
Recall we have

Lecture 4;
September 10, 2019

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{\psi} \xrightarrow{/ G} \stackrel{Y_{\psi}}{\downarrow} \bar{Y}_{\psi} \tag{1.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $G=(\mathbb{Z} / 5 \mathbb{Z})^{3}$. Recall last time we discussed:
(1) Vanishing cycle $T^{3}, \beta_{0}=\in H_{3}\left(Y_{\psi}, \mathbb{Z}\right)$,
(2) Holomorphic 3-form,
(3) Normalization,
(4) Further periods, and
(5) Canonical coordinate/mirror map.

## 7. Holomorphic 3-form

We will construct the holomorphic 3 -form as the residue of a meromorphic/rational 4-form on $\mathbb{P}^{4}$ with zeros along $X_{\psi}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Omega(\psi)=5 \psi \operatorname{Res}_{X_{\psi}} \frac{\tilde{\Omega}}{f_{\psi}} \in \Gamma\left(X_{\psi}, \Omega_{X_{\psi}}^{3}\right) \tag{1.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\Omega}=\sum x_{i} d x_{0} \wedge \ldots \wedge \widehat{d x_{i}} \wedge \ldots \wedge d x_{4} \tag{1.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Locally $x_{4}=1, \partial_{x_{3}} f \neq 0$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Omega(\psi)=\left.5 \psi \frac{d x_{0} \wedge d x_{1} \wedge d x_{2}}{\partial_{x_{3}} f_{\psi}}\right|_{X_{\psi}} \tag{1.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 8. Normalization

Now we deal with normalization. We have $\varphi_{0}:=\int_{\beta_{0}} \Omega(\psi)$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\Omega}=\varphi_{0}^{-1} \Omega(\psi) \tag{1.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

is normalized with resides

$$
\begin{align*}
2 \pi i \int_{\beta_{0}} \Omega(\psi) & =\int_{T^{4}} 5 \psi d x_{0} d x_{1} d x_{2} d x_{3}  \tag{1.61}\\
& =\int_{T^{4}} \frac{d x_{0} \ldots d x_{3}}{x_{0} \ldots x_{3}} \frac{1}{\frac{\left(1+x_{0}^{5}+\ldots+x_{3}^{5}\right)}{5 \psi x_{0} \ldots x_{3}}-1}  \tag{1.62}\\
& =-\sum_{n \geq 0} \int_{T^{4}} \frac{d x_{0} \ldots d x_{3}}{x_{0} \ldots x_{3}} \frac{\left(1+x_{0}^{5}+\ldots+x_{3}^{5}\right)^{n}}{(5 \psi)^{n}\left(x_{0} \ldots x_{3}\right)^{n}}  \tag{1.63}\\
& =-\sum_{n \geq 0} \int_{T^{4}} \frac{d x_{0} \ldots d x_{3}}{x_{0} \ldots x_{3}} \frac{\left(1+x_{0}^{5}+\ldots+x_{3}^{5}\right)^{5 n}}{(5 \psi)^{5 n}\left(x_{0} \ldots x_{3}\right)^{5 n}} \tag{1.64}
\end{align*}
$$

where all summands in both the numerator and denominator must be 5 th powers to contribute. So from some combinatorics we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \pi i \int_{\beta_{0}} \Omega(\psi)=-(2 \pi i)^{4} \sum \frac{(5 n)!}{(n!)^{5}(5 \psi)^{5 n}}=: \varphi_{0}(z) \tag{1.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $z=(1 / 5 \psi)^{5}$. The number $(5 n)!/(n!)^{5}$ is the number of terms

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{0}^{5 n} \ldots x_{3}^{5 n}\left(1+x_{0}^{5}+\ldots+x_{3}^{5}\right)^{5 n} \tag{1.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 9. Further periods

There is a procedure called Griffith's reduction of pole order. This involves the PicardFucks equation.

Locally $H^{3}\left(Y_{\psi}, \mathbb{C}\right)$ is constant with dimension 4 . This gives a trivial holomorphic vector bundle


This has a flat connection $\nabla^{G M}$ called the Gauß-Manin connection. Pointwise

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\psi}=\bigoplus_{p+q=3} H^{p, q}\left(X_{\psi}\right) \tag{1.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we have seen $\Omega(\psi) \in H^{3,0}$. Now consider:

$$
\Omega(z)
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{z} \Omega(z) \tag{1.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\partial_{z}^{2} \Omega(z)
$$

$$
\partial_{z}^{3} \Omega(z)
$$

$$
\partial_{z}^{4} \Omega(z)
$$

which are related by a fourth order ODE with holomorphic coefficients called the PicardFuchs equation.
9.1. Derivation of the equation. Take $X=Z\left(f_{\psi}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}^{4}$. We can produce more 3 -forms from forms with higher-order poles. Consider the long-exact sequence: (1.71)

where $X \subset \mathcal{U}$ is a tubular neighborhood and we are using the form of Lefschetz duality which states that $H^{q}(M, \partial M)=H_{n-q}(M \backslash \partial M)$ and in the last step we use Poincare duality. So we start with things of high pole order, this gives us some class in $H^{3}$, then in our case we take derivatives, and for certain classes we know they should be zero and this gives us some equations.

### 9.2. Griffiths' reduction of pole order. If we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{g \tilde{\Omega}}{f^{l}} \in H^{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{4}, \Omega_{\mathbb{P}^{4} \backslash X}^{4}\right) \tag{1.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

then we must have $\operatorname{deg} g=5 l-5(l=0$ earlier so we had no $g)$. The exact forms look like

$$
\begin{align*}
d\left(\frac { 1 } { f ^ { l } } \left(\sum_{i<j}(-1)^{i+j}\left(x_{i} g_{j}-x_{j} g_{i}\right) d x_{0}\right.\right. & \left.\left.\wedge \ldots \wedge \widehat{d x_{i}} \wedge \ldots \wedge \widehat{d x_{j}} \wedge \ldots d x_{4}\right)\right)  \tag{1.73}\\
& =\left(l \sum g_{j} \partial_{x_{j}} f-f \sum \partial_{x_{j}} g_{j}\right) \frac{\tilde{\Omega}}{f^{l+1}} \tag{1.74}
\end{align*}
$$

If $l \sum g_{j} \partial_{x_{j}} f \in \mathcal{J}(f)=\left(\partial_{x_{i}} f\right)$ then up to an exact form, it is of lower order since one copy of $f$ cancels. I.e. the first term over $f^{l+1}$ is of order $l+1$, and the second term over $f^{l+1}$ is order $l$. The upshot is that the numerator $g \in \mathcal{J}(f)$ can reduce $l$.

So the algorithm is as follows: Compute $\Omega(z), \partial_{z} \Omega(z), \partial_{z}^{2} \Omega(z), \ldots, \partial_{z}^{4} \Omega(z)=g \tilde{\Omega} / f_{\psi}^{5}$ where $g \in \mathcal{J}\left(f_{\psi}\right)$. Then we express $g$ modulo (1.74) as a linear combination of the $\partial_{z}^{i} \Omega(z)$.

Proposition 1.4. Any period

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi=\int_{\alpha} \Omega(\psi) \tag{1.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

fulfills the $O D E$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\theta^{4}-5 z(5 \theta+1)(5 \theta+2)(5 \theta+3)(5 \theta+4)\right] \varphi(z)=0 \tag{1.76}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\theta=z \partial_{z}$.

Remark 1.2. This is easy to check for

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi=\varphi_{0}=\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(5 n)!}{(n!)^{5}} z^{n} \tag{1.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

(1.76) is an ODE with a regular singular pole:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta \varphi(z)=A(z) \varphi(z) \tag{1.78}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\psi(z) \in \mathbb{C}^{s}$.
THEOREM 1.5. (1.78) has a fundamental system of equations of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi(z)=S(z) z^{R} \tag{1.79}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $S(z) \in M\left(s, \mathcal{O}_{0}\right), R \in M(S, \mathbb{C})$, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
z^{R}=I+(\log z) R+(\log z)^{2} R^{2}+\ldots \tag{1.80}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the eigenvalues do not differ by integers, we may take $R=A(0)$.
For (1.76)

$$
A(0) \simeq\left(\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 1 & &  \tag{1.81}\\
& 0 & 1 & \\
& & 0 & 1 \\
& & & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $S=\left(\psi_{0}, \ldots, \psi_{3}\right)$ where $\psi_{i} \in \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C}, 0}^{4}$. This gives us a fundamental system of solutions:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \varphi_{0}(z)=\psi_{0} \text { (single-valued) }  \tag{1.82}\\
& \varphi_{1}(z)=\psi_{0}(z) \log z+\psi_{1}(z)  \tag{1.83}\\
& \varphi_{2}(z)=\psi_{0}(z)(\log z)^{2}+\psi_{1}(z) \log z+\psi_{2}(z)  \tag{1.84}\\
& \varphi_{3}(z)=\psi_{0}(z)(\log z)^{4}+\ldots+\psi_{3}(z) \tag{1.85}
\end{align*}
$$

This has something to do with monodromy. In particular, the monodromy of $z^{A(0)}$ reflects the monodromy $T$ of $H^{3}\left(Y_{z}, \mathbb{C}\right)$ about $z=0($ or $\psi=\infty)$. In fact, one can show that there exists a symplectic basis $\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{0} \in H_{3}\left(Y_{z}, \mathbb{Q}\right)$ with $N=T-I$. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{0} \mapsto \alpha_{1} \mapsto \beta_{1} \mapsto \beta_{0} \mapsto 0 \tag{1.86}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{0}=\int_{\beta_{0}} \Omega(z), \varphi_{1}=\int_{\beta_{1}} \Omega(z), \varphi_{2}=\int_{\alpha_{1}} \Omega(z), \varphi_{3}=\int_{\alpha_{0}} \Omega(z) \tag{1.87}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 10. Canonical coordinate/mirror map

Looking at the solution set, we don't have much choice. The solution, when exponentiated should behave like $z$. Indeed, the canonical coordinate is

$$
\begin{equation*}
q=e^{2 \pi i w} \tag{1.88}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=\frac{\int_{\beta_{1}} \Omega(z)}{\int_{\beta_{0}} \Omega(z)}=\int_{\beta_{1}} \tilde{\Omega}(z) \tag{1.89}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\varphi_{1}(z)=\varphi_{0}(z) \log z+\psi_{1}(z)$ which is easy to obtain as series solution of (1.76).

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi_{1}(z)=5 \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{(5 n)!}{(n!)^{5}}\left(\sum_{j=n+1}^{5 n} \frac{1}{j}\right) z^{n} \tag{1.90}
\end{equation*}
$$

(up to constant $c_{2}$ ).
Last time we learned how to do these period calculations, get canonical equations, and reduce pole order with the Picard Fucks equation. The remaining topic is the Yukawa coupling.

## 11. Yukawa coupling

We want to compute

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\partial_{z}, \partial_{z}, \partial_{z}\right\rangle_{B}=\int_{Y_{z}} \tilde{\Omega}(z) \wedge \partial_{z}^{3} \tilde{\Omega}(z) \tag{1.91}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\tilde{\Omega}(z)=\frac{1}{\varphi_{0}(z)} \Omega(z)$.
We introduce the auxiliary terms

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{k}=\int_{Y_{z}} \Omega(z) \wedge \partial_{2}^{k} \Omega(z) \tag{1.92}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $k=0, \ldots, 4$. So really we just want $W_{3}$. Rewrite the PF equation as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{d^{4}}{d z^{4}}+\sum_{k=0}^{3} c_{k} \frac{d^{k}}{d z^{k}}\right) \Omega(z)=0 \tag{1.93}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{4}+\sum_{k=0}^{3} c_{k} W_{k}=0 \tag{1.94}
\end{equation*}
$$

11.1. Griffiths-transversality. Now we need to put some important information in called Griffiths-transvr. This has to do with how one defines the variation of Hodge structures. Let $\mathcal{U}$ be open inside the moduli space. Now define a decreasing filtration

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}=\underbrace{H^{3}\left(Y_{z}, \mathbb{C}\right)}_{\mathbb{C}^{4}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{U}}=\mathcal{F}^{0} \supset \mathcal{F}^{1} \supset \mathcal{F}^{2} \supset \mathcal{F}^{3} \tag{1.95}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}^{k}=\bigoplus_{q \geq k} R^{q} \pi_{*} \Omega^{3-q} \tag{1.96}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the Hodge filtration. Note that $\Omega \in \Gamma(\mathcal{U}, \underbrace{R^{3} \pi_{*} \Omega^{0}}_{=\mathcal{F}^{3} \simeq \mathcal{O}})$. So why do we write it this way instead of using the direct sum decomposition we seem to have? Abstractly we have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla^{G M} \mathcal{F}^{k} \subseteq \mathcal{F}^{k-1} \otimes \Omega_{\mathcal{M}}^{1} \tag{1.97}
\end{equation*}
$$

This inclusion comes from the definition/construction of $\nabla^{G M}$ and Hodge/Dolbeault theory. Moreover $H^{p, q} \perp H^{p^{\prime}, q^{\prime}}$ unless $p+p^{\prime}=3=q+q^{\prime}\left(\right.$ from $\left.\int_{Y} \alpha \wedge \beta=0\right)$.

Together this gives us that $W_{0}=W_{1}=W_{2}=0$. In particular

$$
\begin{equation*}
0=\frac{d^{2} W_{2}}{d z^{2}}=\ldots=2 W_{3}^{\prime}-W_{4} \tag{1.98}
\end{equation*}
$$

and (1.94) tells us that

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{3}^{\prime}+\frac{1}{2} c_{3} W_{3}=0 \tag{1.99}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we compute

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{3}(z)=\frac{6}{2}-\frac{25^{5}}{1-5^{5} z} \tag{1.100}
\end{equation*}
$$

which by separation of variables gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{3}=\frac{c_{1}}{(2 \pi i)^{3} z^{3}\left(5^{5} z-1\right)} \tag{1.101}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $c_{1}$ some integration constant. Finally, reexpress in $q=e^{2 \pi i w}$ where $w=\varphi_{1}(z) / \varphi_{0}(z)$. When we expand we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\langle\partial_{w}, \partial_{w}, \partial_{w}\right\rangle_{B} & =-c_{1}-575 \frac{c_{1}}{c_{2}} q-\frac{1950750}{2} \frac{c_{1}}{c_{2}^{2}} q^{3}-\frac{10277490000}{6} \frac{c_{1}}{c_{2}^{3}} q^{3}+\ldots  \tag{1.102}\\
& =!5+\sum_{d \geq 1} d^{3} n_{d} \frac{q^{d}}{1-q^{d}}  \tag{1.103}\\
& =5+n_{1} q+\left(8 n_{2}+n_{1}\right) q^{2}+\left(27 n_{3}+n_{1}\right) q^{3}+\ldots \tag{1.104}
\end{align*}
$$

This predicts that $n_{1}=2875$ (which was classically known) and $n_{2}=6092500$ was also correct (as was shown just a few years earlier than this development by Katz in 1986). Then $n_{3}=317206375$ which originally disagreed with the result, but they found out there was an error in the computation so it also agreed. The first proof of this was in 1996 by Givental.

Lessons learned: ${ }^{1.3}$
(1) The prediction depends on the large complex structure limit because this has something to do with the Kähler cone:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{K}_{X}=d\left\{[\omega] \in H_{d R}^{2}(X) \mid \omega \text { Kähler }\right\} . \tag{1.105}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular the monodromy in $H^{3}(Y)=\bigoplus_{p=0}^{3} H^{p, 3-p}$ corresponds to $\smile\left[\omega_{X}\right]$ on $\bigoplus_{p=0}^{3} H^{p, p}(X)$. Note however that $\left\rangle_{B}\right.$ is defined on all of $\mathcal{M}_{B}$ !
(2) Orbifolding construction of the mirror is special to the quintic. Batyrev/Borisov consider a mirror for complete intersections in toric varieties.

[^4]
## CHAPTER 2

## Stacks

We will learn some things about moduli spaces and stacks to motivate a discussion of Gromov-Witten theory. Hopefully also the logarithmic version and Donaldson-Thomas theory.

The general task is to make sense of curve counting, e.g. the number of genus 0 holomorphic curves in a quintic. Then we have the following problems:

- Classical enumerative algebraic geometry: "general position arguments" needed to make counts work. Transversaily can be very difficult.
- Translate into problem of topology, e.g. intersection theory in Grassmannian $\mathrm{Gr}(k, n)$ (Schubert calculus).
- Generally, spaces of curves, e.g. on a given quintic don't have the right dimension.

Example 2.1. Consider the Dwork family $f_{\psi}=0$. There are 375 isolated lines $\left(\simeq \mathbb{P}^{1}\right)$, e.g. $\left(u, v,-\zeta^{k} u,-\zeta^{k} v, 0\right)$ for $u, v \in \mathbb{P}^{1}, \zeta^{5}=1,0 \leq k, l \leq 4$ and then two irreducible families. In degree $>1$ we also always have multiple covers that come in families.

So how do we count in the absence of general deformations? The solution is that there is a virtual formalism. This is exactly what Gromov-Witten theory does. Invariants are constant in families of targets.

## 1. Moduli spaces

So we are interested in a set of closed points. In particular, this consists of isomorphism classes of certain algebraic geometric objects e.g. varieties, subvarieties. Then we want so somehow give it some extra structure. The best scenario would be to view it as a variety.

Let $T \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ be the structure sheaf. Then the point is that holomorphic maps correspond to families of objects over $T$.

Example 2.2. Fix some $N$. The Hilbert scheme $\operatorname{Hilb}\left(\mathbb{P}^{N}\right)$ will somehow classify closed subschemes. In particular it has the universal property that for any

$$
\begin{align*}
& Z \subset T \times \mathbb{P}^{N} \\
& \downarrow \text { flat, proper }  \tag{2.1}\\
& T
\end{align*}
$$

we have a unique map $\varphi$ such that


In categorical terms this says that we have a functor

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { Sch } \underset{F}{F} \text { Set }  \tag{2.3}\\
& T \longmapsto\left\{Z \rightarrow T, Z \hookrightarrow T \times \mathbb{P}^{N} \text { flat, proper }\right\}
\end{align*}
$$

which is corepresented by Hilb $\left(\mathbb{P}^{N}\right)$. This means we have a natural isomorphism $F \rightarrow$ $\operatorname{hom}\left(\cdot, \operatorname{Hilb}\left(\mathbb{P}^{N}\right)\right)$. In particular we get that $\operatorname{id}_{\mathbf{H i l b}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)} \in \operatorname{hom}\left(\operatorname{Hilb}\left(\mathbb{P}^{N}\right), \operatorname{Hilb}\left(\mathbb{P}^{N}\right)\right)$ corresponds to $F\left(\operatorname{Hilb}\left(\mathbb{P}^{N}\right)\right)$, e.g. the universal family.

Discouraging observation: For families of curves ${ }^{2.1}$ we cannot have (co-)representability.
The reason is that there are families of curves where all of the fibers are isomorphic but they are not globally a product. So if we had such a corepresentation then this can't pull back to the identity.

Lecture 6;
September 17, 2019
1.1. The problem of moduli for curves. We will kind of follow [9]. [8] is where stacks were first really worked out.

We want to repeat the story of Hilb for complete curves of genus $g$.
Recall the notion of families. If $S$ is a scheme (think of this as some sort of parameter space), then a curve of genus $g$ over $S$ is a morphism $\pi: C \rightarrow S$ such that:
(1) $\pi$ is proper, flat;
(2) recall the geometric fibers

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{S}=\operatorname{Spec} K \times{ }_{S} C \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $K$ algebraically closed, fit into the diagram


Then we ask that:
(a) $C_{S}$ is reduced, connected, $\operatorname{dim} C_{S}=1$,
(b) $h^{1}\left(C_{S}, \mathcal{O}_{C}\right)=g$ (arithmetic genus).

One can also restrict the allowed singularities of these fibers, but this is not necessary for us at the moment. E.g. one might ask for $C_{S}$ to be non-singular.

[^5]Now we have a fundamental problem. The functor


$$
\begin{equation*}
S \longmapsto\{X \rightarrow S \mid \text { non-singular curve of genus } g\} \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

cannot be representable since there are nontrivial isotrivial families of curves, i.e. $\pi: X \rightarrow S$ which becomes trivial only after (finite) base change. To see that this is the case, proceed by contradiction. Suppose it is representable by some $\mathcal{M}_{g}$, then

but this map being constant implies $\varphi$ is constant which is a contradiction.
Example 2.3. Let $C_{0}$ be a curve with $\operatorname{Aut}\left(C_{0}\right) \neq\{1\}$, e.g. $C_{0} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{1}$ a two-to-one hyperelliptic curve, e.g. the projective closure of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(y^{2}-(x-g-1)(x-g) \ldots(x-1)(x+1) \ldots(x+g+1)=0\right) \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have one automorphism which swaps the two branches and one which sends $x \rightarrow-x$ so we have $(\mathbb{Z} / 2)^{2}$ symmetry. Take $\varphi$ to be any automorphism such that $\varphi^{a}=$ id. Recall $\mathbb{G}_{M}=\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{C}\left[x, x^{-1}\right]$. Take $C_{0} \times \mathbb{G}_{m} /(\mathbb{Z} / a)$. The action is as follows. For $\mathbb{C}^{\times} \ni \zeta \neq 1$, $\zeta^{a}=1$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\varphi, \zeta):(z, t) \mapsto(\varphi(z), \zeta \cdot t) \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

So this is a nontrivial bundle over $\mathbb{G}_{m}$.
REmARK 2.1. If automorphisms are the problem, then why not just stick to ones without them. As it turns out, restricting to $C_{S}$ with $\operatorname{Aut}\left(C_{S}\right)=\{1\}$ would indeed make $F_{g}$ representable, but it is not very useful.

Instead, we will construct the moduli space as an algebraic stack, which is a generalization of the notion of a scheme accomodating automorphisms from the beginning.

## 2. Stacks

Another good reference (which is unfortunately only in French ${ }^{2.2}$ ) is [20].
The idea here is to formalize the notion of a "family of objects parameterized by a scheme along fibrewise automorphisms".

Fix a base scheme $S$ (think $\mathbb{C}$ ). Write $\mathcal{S}=\operatorname{Sch} / S$ for the category of schemes over $S$.
Definition 2.1. (1) A category over $\mathcal{S}$ is a category $\mathcal{F}$ together with a functor $p_{\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$. For $B \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{S})$, we have a fibre category $\mathcal{F}(B)$ which is a subcategory of $\mathcal{F}$ with objects

$$
\left\{X \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{F}) \mid p_{\mathcal{F}}(X)=B\right\}
$$

and morphisms

$$
\left\{\varphi \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathcal{F}) \mid p_{\mathcal{F}}(\varphi)=\operatorname{id}_{B}\right\}
$$

${ }^{2.2}$ Professor Siebert says it isn't a big deal since French is basically English.
(2) A category over $\mathcal{S}$ is a groupoid over $\mathcal{S}$ (or fibered groupoid) if
(a) For all $f: B^{\prime} \rightarrow B$ in $\mathcal{S}$ and $X \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{F})$ there exists $\varphi: X^{\prime} \rightarrow X$ in $\mathcal{F}$ with $p_{\mathcal{F}}(\varphi)=f:$

(b) For all commutative diagrams

(i.e. $\left.p_{\mathcal{F}}\left(\varphi^{\prime}\right)=p_{\mathcal{F}}\left(\varphi^{\prime \prime}\right) \circ h\right)$ there exists unique $\chi: X^{\prime} \rightarrow X^{\prime \prime}$ and $\varphi^{\prime}=\varphi^{\prime \prime} \circ \chi$.

REMARK 2.2. (i) (ii) implies that $\varphi: X^{\prime} \rightarrow X$ is an isomorphism iff $p_{\mathcal{F}}(\varphi)$ is an isomorphism.
(ii) $p_{\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ groupoid over $\mathcal{S}$ implies $\mathcal{F}(B)$ are groupoids.
(iii) (ii) implies

$X^{\prime}$ is unique up to unique isomorphism. Write $f^{*} X:=X^{\prime}$. This is called the pull-back. This construction is functorial in the sense that $\psi: X^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow X^{\prime}$ in $\mathcal{F}(B)$ yields a canonical morphisms $f^{*} \psi: f^{*} X^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow f^{*} X^{\prime}$, i.e. $f: B^{\prime} \rightarrow B$ gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{*}: \mathcal{F}(B) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}\left(B^{\prime}\right) \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 2.4 (Representable functors). Let $\mathcal{F}: \mathcal{S} \rightarrow$ Set be a contravariant functor. This yields a groupoid. The objects are $(B, \beta)$ such that $B \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{S})$ and $\beta \in \mathcal{F}(B)$. The idea is that $p_{\mathcal{F}}:(B, \beta) \mapsto B$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{hom}\left(\left(B^{\prime}, \beta^{\prime}\right),(B, \beta)\right)=\left\{f: B^{\prime} \rightarrow B \mid F(f)(\beta)=\beta^{\prime}\right\} \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

For example if $X$ is an $S$-scheme then this defines (is equivalent to) the functor $F(B):=$ $\operatorname{Hom}_{S}(B, X)$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
F\left(\varphi: B^{\prime} \rightarrow B\right):(f: B \rightarrow X) \mapsto\left(f \circ \varphi: B^{\prime} \rightarrow X\right) \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

The associated groupoid $\underline{X}=\mathcal{F}$ has objects $f: B \rightarrow X$ in $\mathcal{Y}=\mathbf{S c h} / S$ with morphisms

and $p_{X}:(B \rightarrow X) \mapsto B$.
Example 2.5 (Quotient stack). Let $X / S$ be a scheme with an action of a (flat) group scheme $G / S$ (e.g. GL ${ }_{n}$ ). Then we can take the quotient $[X / G]$. The objects are diagrams

$$
\begin{align*}
& E \xrightarrow{f} X \\
& \downarrow  \tag{2.19}\\
& B
\end{align*}
$$

where $E / B$ is a $G$-principal bundle and $f$ is $G$-equivariant. The morphisms are given by

where the square on the left must be cartesian.
Fact 1. $G$ acts freely on $X$ and $X / G$ exists as a scheme so $[X / G]=\underline{X / G}$.
Example 2.6 (Classifying spaces of principal $G$-bundles). For $X=\mathrm{pt}, B G:=[\mathrm{pt} / G]$.
So we have three main examples. First, if $X$ is scheme we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\underline{X}(S):=\operatorname{Hom}(S, X) \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lecture 7;
September 19, 2019
(Note that $\underline{S}=\mathcal{S}$ ).
Then for $G \subset X$ we get $[X / G]$. For $F: \mathbf{S c h} / S \rightarrow$ Set we get $\mathcal{F}$ an $S$-groupoid.
Third, we have the moduli groupoid $\mathcal{M}_{g}$. The objects are curves $X \rightarrow B$, for $B$ any scheme, $X_{s}$ non-singular for all $s$. The morphisms are given by cartesian diagrams:


Note this is not the groupoid associated to $F_{g}$.
Similarly, one defines the universal curve $\mathcal{C}_{g}$ over $\mathcal{M}_{g}$. The objects are pairs $(X \rightarrow B, \sigma)$ where $\sigma: B \rightarrow X$ is a section.

### 2.1. Morphisms of groupoids.

Definition 2.2. A morphism between groupoids $F_{1}, F_{2}$ over $S$ is a functor

where $p_{F_{1}}=p_{F_{2}} \circ p$. Note this is equality of functors.

EXAMPLE 2.7. We have the forgetful functor $\mathcal{C}_{g} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{g}$ which simply forgets the section.
Example 2.8. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a morphism of schemes. This is equivalent to $p: \underline{X} \rightarrow \underline{Y}$ being a morphism of the associated groupoids.

Proof. $\Longrightarrow:$ On objects, $p(B \xrightarrow{u} X):=X \xrightarrow{\text { fou }} Y$. On morphisms
$(\Longleftarrow)$ : If we have

then $p\left(X \xrightarrow{\text { id }_{X}} X\right)=(X \xrightarrow{f} Y) \in \operatorname{Obj} \underline{Y}(X)$ for some $f$. This is exactly the setup of Yoneda's Lemma: $p$ can be viewed as a natural transformation between

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{S}}(\cdot, X): \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{S e t} \tag{2.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

and another functor $G: \mathcal{S} \rightarrow$ Set. Then Yoneda says that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Nat}\left(\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{S}}(\cdot, X), G\right) \xrightarrow{=} G(X) \tag{2.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Phi \mapsto \Phi\left(\mathrm{id}_{X}\right)$. This shows us that $p$ is induced by $f$.
Example 2.9. Similarly, for a scheme $B$ and a groupoid over $\mathcal{S} F$, we get that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\{p: \underline{B} \rightarrow F\}=F(B) \tag{2.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p \mapsto p\left(\mathrm{id}_{B}\right)$.
Example 2.10. $\mathcal{S}=\underline{S}$ and for any groupoid $F$ over $S$, we can view $p_{F}: F \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ as a morphism of groupoids $F \rightarrow \underline{S}$.

Example 2.11. Let $X / S$ be a scheme with the action of a group scheme $G / S$. This yields a quotient morphism $q: \underline{X} \rightarrow[X / G]$.

On objects:

$$
(B \stackrel{s}{\rightarrow} X) \mapsto\left(\begin{array}{c}
(g, b) \longmapsto s(b)  \tag{2.29}\\
G \subset G \times B \longrightarrow X \\
\downarrow \\
B
\end{array}\right)
$$

On morphisms

REMARK 2.3. Isomorphisms of groupoids are given by equivalences of categories over $S$. In particular, $p_{1}: F_{1} \xrightarrow{\text { iso }} F_{2}$ may not have an inverse, just a quasi-inverse $q: F_{2} \rightarrow F_{1}$ such that $p q$ is naturally isomorphic to $\operatorname{id}_{F_{2}}$ and $q p$ naturally isomorphic to $\mathrm{id}_{F_{1}}$.
$S$-groupoids in fact form a 2 -category Grpd/S. The objects are groupoids over $S$. The 1-morphisms are functors over $S$ between the groupoids. But now we in fact have another kind of morphism, called a 2-morphism which are morphisms between morphisms.

REmark 2.4. We can't even define what a cartesian diagram is without talking about these 2-morphisms so it really is necessary to understand them.

Proposition 2.1. Let $X$ and $Y$ be schemes. Then $X \simeq Y$ as schemes iff $\underline{X} \simeq \underline{Y}$ as groupoids over $S$.

Proof. $(\Longrightarrow):$ Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be an isomorphism. Then the induced map $p: \underline{X} \rightarrow \underline{Y}$ is a strong equivalence. Indeed, $f^{-1}$ induces $q: \underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$ with $p q=\operatorname{id}_{\underline{Y}}$ and $q p=\operatorname{id} \underline{X} \underline{X}$.
$(\Longleftarrow):$ Let $p: \underline{X} \rightarrow \underline{Y}$ be an equivalence, $q: \underline{Y} \rightarrow \underline{X}$ a quasi-inverse. As we have seen this means $p, q$ are induced by $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow X$ which implies $q p\left(X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_{X}} X\right)=$ $(X \xrightarrow{g f} X)$ as objects in $\underline{X}$. Hence $q$ is a quasi-inverse of $p$, which implies there exists an isomorphism

and similarly for $f g$, so $f$ is an isomorphism.
REMARK 2.5. So this tells us we have some kind of subcategory of schemes inside of groupoids. In the future we will write $X$ instead of $\underline{X}$. Similarly we will also write $\mathcal{S}, \underline{S}$, and $S$ for the same thing.

### 2.2. Fibre products and cartesian diagrams.

Definition 2.3. Consider three groupoids $F, G$, and $H$ over $S$ and morphisms $f$ : $F \rightarrow G, h: H \rightarrow G$. The fiber product is as follows. The objects (over a base $B$ ) are triples $(x, y, \psi)$ where $x \in F(B), Y \in H(B)$, and $\psi: f(x) \rightarrow h(y)$ is an isomorphism in $G(B)$.

The morphisms (over $B)(x, y, \psi) \rightarrow\left(x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, \psi^{\prime}\right)$ are pairs

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(x^{\prime} \xrightarrow{\alpha} x, y^{\prime} \xrightarrow{\beta} Y\right) \tag{2.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi \circ f(\alpha)=h(\beta) \circ \psi^{\prime} \tag{2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

So now this fits in the diagram

which only commutes up to 2-morphisms.
Warning 2.1. This diagram does not commute in general. We have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f p(x, y, \psi)=f(x) \quad g q(x, y, \psi)=h(y) \tag{2.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

But there is is a natural isomorphism of functors $f p \simeq h q$, i.e. the diagram Eq. (2.34) is 2-commutative. So we need this $\psi$ twisting to get them to agree.

Then $F \times_{G} H$ has the universal property for 2-commutative diagrams:


Example 2.12. For $X, Y$, and $Z$ schemes we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\underline{X} \times_{\underline{Z}} \underline{Y}=\underline{X \times{ }_{Z} Y} . \tag{2.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 2.13 (Base change). If $T \rightarrow S$ is a morphism of schemes then $T \times{ }_{S} F$ is a groupoid over $T$. Actually, for all $B \rightarrow T, F(B)$ and $\left(T \times{ }_{S} F\right)(B)$ are equivalent

2.3. Definition of stacks. We want to get closer to something which allows us to do algebraic geometry.

Definition 2.4 (Iso-functor). Let $\left(F, p_{F}\right)$ be a groupoid over $S, B$ a scheme over $S$, and $X, Y \in \operatorname{Obj}(F(B))$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Iso}_{B}(X, Y): \mathbf{S c h} / B \rightarrow \mathbf{S e t} \tag{2.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the following contravariant functor. On objects:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(B^{\prime} \xrightarrow{f} B\right) \mapsto\left\{f^{*} X \xrightarrow{\varphi} f^{*} Y \mid \varphi \text { iso }\right\} . \tag{2.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

On morphisms we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
B^{\prime \prime} \stackrel{h}{\searrow_{B} \swarrow_{f}^{\longrightarrow}} B^{\prime} \mapsto(\left(f^{*} X \rightarrow f^{*} Y\right) \mapsto(\underbrace{h^{*} f^{*} X}_{=g^{*} X} \rightarrow \underbrace{h^{*} f^{*} Y}_{=g^{*} Y})) \tag{2.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem 2.2 (Deligne-Mumford). Take two curves $X / B, Y / B$ of genus 2 . The isofunctor $\mathrm{Iso}_{B}(X, Y)$ is represented by a scheme.

Proof. We know we have the relative holomorphic cotangent bundles $\omega_{X / B}$ and $\omega_{Y / B}$. These are ample, so they give us an embedding into projective space over $B$. These are canonical bundles, so any isomorphism $f^{*} X \rightarrow g^{*} Y$ (for any $f: B^{\prime} \rightarrow B$ ) preserves this polarization. Now we can use the relative Hilbert scheme (for the graph of $f^{*} X \rightarrow f^{*} Y$ ).

Remark 2.6. Iso $_{B}(X, Y)$ is finite and unramified over $B$, but not in general flat (e.g. fibre cardinalities can jump).

Lecture 8;
September 24, 2019

Definition 2.5 (Stack). A groupoid $\left(\mathcal{F}, p_{\mathcal{F}}\right)$ over $S$ is a stack if:
(1) for any $B$ over $S$ and any $X, X^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{F}(B)), \operatorname{Iso}_{B}\left(X, X^{\prime}\right)$ is a sheaf in the étale topology;
(2) for $\left\{B_{i} \rightarrow B\right\}$ an étale covering of $B, X_{i} \in \operatorname{Obj}\left(F\left(B_{i}\right)\right)$, isomorphisms

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{i j}:\left.\left.X_{j}\right|_{B_{i} \times_{B} B_{j}} \rightarrow X_{i}\right|_{B_{i} \times_{B} B_{j}} \tag{2.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

satisfying the cocycle condition, they glue, i.e. there exists $X \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{F}(B))$ and isomorphisms $\left.X\right|_{B_{i}} \simeq X_{i}$ inducing $\varphi_{i j}$.
Remark 2.7. The first condition could be thought of as some sort of descent for morphisms, and the second can be thought of as descent for objects.

Étale topology. The authoritative reference on this subject is $[\mathbf{1 8}],[\mathbf{2 3}]$ is easier to read. Replace Zariski open subsets by étale morphisms $U \rightarrow X$. The intuition is to think of these as being an unbranched morphism which is locally a diffeomorphism in $U$. The intersection of $U \rightarrow X, V \rightarrow X$ is given b y $U \times_{X} V \rightarrow X$. This is an example of what is called a Grothendieck topology.

Formally, smooth/unramified/étale morphisms $f: X \rightarrow Y$ are morphisms of schemes (of finite type). Let $T=\operatorname{Spec} A \hookrightarrow T^{\prime}=\operatorname{Spec} A^{\prime}$ be an infinitesimal extension, i.e. $A=A^{\prime} / I$ where $I^{n}=0$ for some $n$.

Example 2.14. Spec $k \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} k[\epsilon] /\left(\epsilon^{n}\right) \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} k[\epsilon] /\left(\epsilon^{n+1}\right)$. For $n=2$ this is a square zero extension $\operatorname{Spec} k \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} k[\epsilon] /\left(\epsilon^{2}\right)$.

In this situation, we look at all diagrams:


Then we ask for the properties:

- $\exists \tilde{\psi}$
- uniqueness of $\tilde{\psi}$.

Definition 2.6. $f$ is formally
(1) smooth iff this exists,
(2) unramified iff this is unique, and
(3) étale iff it exists and is unique.

Example 2.15. The $2: 1$ cover in Fig. 1 is étale but is not smooth.

$\downarrow$

Figure 1. The two to one cover of the curve $V\left(y^{2}-x^{3}-x^{2}\right)$.

The smooth case should look like a projection. So we can lift a tangent vector but it won't be unique. The étale case looks like mapping two curves onto one, then we choose a point upstairs using $\varphi$ and the lift is unique. Then a ramified example (which is not smooth) is the cover $\mathbb{A}^{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{1}$ corresponding to the algebraic map $z \mapsto z^{2}$. The only vector with unique lift is the 0 vector, and the others can somehow lift to anything.

### 2.4. Examples of stacks.

Example 2.16. Let $\mathcal{F}$ be the groupoid associated to a functor

$$
\begin{equation*}
F: \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \text { Set } \tag{2.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\mathcal{F}$ is a stack iff $F$ is a sheaf (of sets) in the étale topology. If we take $F=\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{S}}(-, X)$ and $X \in \mathcal{S}$ then this is a stack (needs étale descent for morphisms). Note that $F=$ $F_{g}$ (moduli functor) is not a stack since families might not glue, i.e. (2) from the definition might not be satisfied.

Example 2.17. The moduli groupoid $\mathcal{M}_{g}$ is a stack.
Proposition 2.3. If $G / S$ is a flat (affine/separated) group scheme $\bigcirc X$ then $[X / G]$ is a stack.

Proof. For (2) we need an étale descent for principal bundles ( $G$-torsors).
For (1) we claim that $\underline{\operatorname{Iso}_{B}}\left(f, f^{\prime}\right)$ is represented by a scheme where


It is enough to check étale locally on $B$, so we may assume $E=B \times G=E^{\prime}$. So the situation we have $\sigma: B \rightarrow E$ and $\sigma^{\prime}: B \rightarrow E^{\prime}$. Then we get $f \circ \sigma$ and $f^{\prime} \circ \sigma^{\prime}$ are two morphisms
$B \rightarrow X$, and then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\underline{\operatorname{Iso}_{B}}\left(f, f^{\prime}\right)=B \times_{X} B \tag{2.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

which fits into the fiber diagram:


Remark 2.8. The étale descent for schemes themselves (not their morphisms) leads to the notion of algebraic spaces (Artin, Knutson).

Example 2.18. If $\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{H}$ are stacks with maps $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ and $\mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ then $\mathcal{F} \times_{\mathcal{G}} \mathcal{H}$ is a stack.
2.5. Representable morphisms. Some morphisms of stacks are "scheme-like":

Definition 2.7. A morphism $f: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ of stacks is representable if for any scheme $B$ and morphism $B \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ the fiber product $\mathcal{F} \times{ }_{B} \mathcal{G}$ is (the groupoid associated to) a scheme (better: an algebraic space).

Example 2.19. Consider $X \rightarrow[X / G]$. $E$ such that the following diagram is fibered:

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
E & X \\
\downarrow & \downarrow  \tag{2.48}\\
B & \longrightarrow[X / G]
\end{array}
$$

is a scheme.
Example 2.20. Recall we have $\mathcal{M}_{g}$ the moduli space of genus $g$ curves over $B$, and then we have $\mathcal{C}_{g} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{g}$ which consists of curves along with sections. Then we have a fibered diagram


The idea is that if we have properties of morphisms of schemes stable under base change (so they are compatible with the philosophy of stacks) then we can move these properties to the world of stacks.

Definition 2.8. Let $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ be representable. Then this has property $P$ (of morphisms of schemes), stable under base change, ${ }^{2.3}$ if for any $B \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$, for $B$ a scheme, $B \times_{\mathcal{G}} \mathcal{F} \rightarrow B$ has this property.

Example 2.21. For $G$ smooth over $S, G \subset X, X \rightarrow[X / G]$ is smooth.

[^6]
### 2.6. Definition of DM-stack.

Definition 2.9. A stack $\mathcal{F}$ is a Deligne-Mumford stack if
(1) $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \times_{S} \mathcal{F}$ is representable, quasi-compact, and separated, ${ }^{2.4}$ If $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$ is in addition proper, one says $\mathcal{F}$ is separated.
(2) There is an étale surjective morphism (an étale atlas) $\varphi: U \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ with $U$ a scheme.

Now we have some comments.
(1) The first is the representability of $\Delta_{X}$.

Lecture 9;
September 26, 2019

Proposition 2.4. $\Delta_{X}$ is representable iff any morphism $B \rightarrow C$ where $B$ is a scheme and is representable.

Proof. $(\Longrightarrow)$ : So we for two schemes $B$ and $B^{\prime}$ we want to show that $B^{\prime} \times_{X} B$ is a scheme:


But this is implied by $\Delta_{X}$ being representable:


Another aspect is that $X, Y \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{F}(B))$ implies $\operatorname{Iso}_{\underline{B}}(X, Y)$ is representable by a scheme.

Proof. $\mathrm{Iso}_{\underline{B}}(X, Y)$ is represented by the following. $X$ and $Y$ correspond to two maps $f, g: \bar{B} \rightarrow X$. Then the fiber product

represents the iso-functor and hence it is a scheme.
(2) $\Delta_{X}$ is quasi-compact: we don't want $\mathrm{Iso}_{\underline{B}}(X, Y)$ to be too wild. This can be relaxed (as in the Stacks project).
(3) $\Delta_{X}$ separated: an isomorphism is the identity if it is so generally.
(4) When is $\Delta_{X}$ proper? This should be related to the separatedness of the stack $X$. For schemes we act for $X \rightarrow X \times_{S} X$ to be a closed embedding.

[^7](5) The atlas provides what are called versal deformation spaces for deformations over Artin rings. Write $\bar{A}=A / I$ such that $I^{n}=0$ The idea is that we have

and we get unique maps.
(6) Atlas is étale: makes $\Delta_{F}$ unramified, i.e. automorphisms are somehow discrete. If we only have a smooth atlas this is what is called an Artin stack (or algebraic stack).

Example 2.22. If we take $B G=[\mathrm{pt} / G]$ for $G / S$ flat (not étale) this is an Artin stack.

## Separatedness of stacks.

Lemma 2.5. Let $f: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ be a morphism of stacks fulfilling condition 1 Then $\Delta_{F / G}$ : $F \rightarrow F \times_{G} F$ is representable.

Proof. See [20].

## A criterion for an Artin stack to be DM.

Theorem 2.6. Let $\mathcal{F}$ be an algebraic stack over a Noetherian scheme $S$ with a smooth atlas $U \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ of finite type over $S$. Then $\mathcal{F}$ is $D M$ iff $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$ is unramified.

Proof. See [20] or [9] Theorem 2.1.
Corollary 2.7. Let $\mathcal{G} / S$ be a smooth affine group scheme acting on a Noetherian scheme $X / S$, both of finite type over $S$, such that the geometric points have finite and reduced stabilizers.

Then
(i) $[X / G]$ is a DM-stack (for trivial stabilizers, an algebraic space)
(ii) $[X / G]$ is separated iff action is proper.

Proof. (1) Having finite reduced stabilizers implies that for all

$$
B \rightarrow[X / G]=\left(\begin{array}{l}
E \rightarrow X  \tag{2.54}\\
\downarrow \\
B
\end{array}\right)
$$

which means $\operatorname{Iso}_{\underline{B}}(E, E) / B$ is unramified. Then this means $\Delta_{[X / G]}$ is unramified and $X \rightarrow[X / G]$ is smooth which implies (by the above theorem) that $[X / G]$ is DM.

## 3. Stable curves

For a complete (read: compact) moduli stack of curves we need to add singular curves. The insight of Deligne-Mumford was that adding node ${ }^{2.5}$ suffices.

[^8]Definition 2.10. A (DM) stable curve over a scheme $S$ is a proper flat morphism $\pi: C \rightarrow S$ such that
(i) the geometric fibers $C_{s}$ are reduced, connected, one-dimensional with at most nodes as singularities,
(ii) if $E \subset C_{S}$ is non-singular rational, $\nu: \tilde{E} \rightarrow E$ the normalization, then the number of the preimage of singular points under $\nu$ is $\geq 3$.
We also want $C_{s}$ to not be smooth of genus 0 or 1 .
Remark 2.9. Condition (ii) is equivalent to Aut ( $C_{S}$ ) being finite.
Note that the genus is $g=h^{1}\left(C_{S}, \mathcal{O}_{C_{S}}\right)$.
This gives us immediately that this is a groupoid of stable curves of genus $g: \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g}$ which is (at this point) a stack over $\mathbb{Z}$.
3.1. $\overline{\mathcal{M}_{g}}$ is a DM-stack. Recall that for a stable curve, $\pi: C \rightarrow S$ is an étale locally complete intersection morphism and hence has a relative dualizing invertible sheaf $\omega_{C / S}$. Explicitly on geometric fibers we have the normalization:

$$
\begin{gather*}
C_{S}^{\prime} \xrightarrow{\nu} C_{S}  \tag{2.55}\\
x_{i}, y_{i} \longmapsto i \text { th node }
\end{gather*}
$$

Then we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nu^{*} \omega_{C_{S}}=\omega_{C_{S}^{\prime}}\left(x_{1}+\ldots+x_{r}+y_{1}+\ldots+y_{r}\right) \tag{2.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\alpha \in \omega_{C_{S}}(U)$ (where $U$ is a neighborhood of the $i$ th node) we have that $\nu^{*} \alpha$ is a rational 1-form with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Res}_{x_{i}}\left(\nu^{*} \alpha\right)+\operatorname{Res}_{y_{i}}\left(\nu^{*} \alpha\right)=0 \tag{2.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now use $\omega_{C / S}^{\otimes n}$ to embed $C / S$ into $\mathbb{P}_{S}^{N}$ for some $N$.
Theorem 2.8. For $g \geq 2, \omega_{C / S}^{\otimes n}$ is relatively very ample for $n \geq 3$. Moreover, $\pi_{*}\left(\omega_{C / S}^{\otimes n}\right)$ is locally free of rank $(2 n-1)(g-1)$.

Lecture 10; October 1, 2019
Sketch proof. For $C$ smooth, $\omega_{C / S}^{\otimes n}$ is relatively very amply for all $n \geq 2$. Let's consider the case $S=\operatorname{Spec} k$. By Riemann-Roch and Serre duality we can compute:

$$
\begin{align*}
h^{0}\left(C, \omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\right) & =h^{1}\left(C, \omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\right)+\operatorname{deg}\left(\omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\right)+1-g  \tag{2.58}\\
& =h^{0}\left(C,\left(\omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\right)^{-1} \otimes \omega_{C}\right)+n(2 g-2)+1-g \tag{2.59}
\end{align*}
$$

For $C$ smooth we get that $\left(\omega_{X}^{\otimes n}\right)^{-1} \otimes \omega_{C}=\omega_{C}^{1-n}$, and the degree is $(1-n)\left(2 g-g_{2}\right)<0$, so this gives so $h^{0}\left(C,\left(\omega_{C}^{1-n}\right)\right)=0$ and we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{0}\left(C, \omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\right)=(2 n-1)(g-1) \tag{2.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can also twist $h^{0}\left(C, \omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\left(-p_{1}-p_{2}\right)\right)$ and this is still zero. So we can separate points and tangents, which is a criterion for being very ample.

For $C$ nodal, we can take the normalization $\nu: C^{\prime} \rightarrow C$ where $C^{\prime}$ is smooth. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{\text {sing }}=\left\{z_{1}, \ldots, z_{n}\right\} \quad \nu^{-1}\left(z_{i}\right)=\left\{x_{i}, y_{i}\right\} \tag{2.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\alpha \in H^{0}\left(U, \omega_{C}\right)$ we have that $\nu^{*} \alpha$ is a rational section of $\omega_{C^{\prime}}=\Omega_{C^{\prime}}^{1}$ with simple poles at $\left\{x_{i}, y_{i}\right\}$ (with $\left.\operatorname{Res}_{x^{\prime}}\left(\nu^{*} \alpha\right)+\operatorname{Res}_{y_{i}}\left(\nu^{*} \alpha\right)=0\right)$ so we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nu^{*} \omega_{C}=\Omega_{C^{\prime}}\left(\sum x_{i}+\sum y_{i}\right) \tag{2.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

This shows, in any case, that $\omega_{C}^{\otimes n}$ is very ample for $n \geq 3$. Worse case we have a rational $(g=0)$ irreducible component $D$ of $C$ with 3 special points which gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\nu^{*} \omega_{C}\right|_{D} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{1}}(1) \tag{2.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, use cohomology and base change.
Corollary 2.9. Every stable curve $C$ of genus $g$ can be ( $n$-canonically) embedded into $\mathbb{P}^{N}$ for $N=(2 n-2)(g-1)-1(n \geq 3)$ with Hilbert polynomial

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{g, n}(t)=(2 n t-1)(g-1) \tag{2.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

DEfinition 2.11. $\bar{H}_{g, n} \subset \operatorname{Hilb}_{\mathbb{P}^{N}}^{P_{g, n}}$ consists of $n$-canonically embedded nodal curves.
This is an open subscheme (nodes can at most smooth out)
REMARK 2.10. (a) Having a morphism $S \rightarrow \bar{H}_{g, n}$ is the same as for a stable curve $\pi: C \rightarrow S$ of genus $g$ having an isomorphism $\mathbb{P}\left(\pi_{*}\left(\omega_{C / S}^{\otimes n}\right)\right) \xrightarrow{\simeq} S \times \mathbb{P}^{N}$.
(b) PGL $(N+1)$ acts on $\bar{H}_{g, n}$ by its action on $\mathbb{P}^{n}$.

Theorem 2.10. $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g} \simeq\left[\bar{H}_{g, n} / \operatorname{PGL}(N+1)\right]$.
Proof. We will define a functor

$$
\begin{equation*}
p: \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g} \rightarrow\left[\bar{H}_{g, n} / \operatorname{PGL}(N+1)\right] \tag{2.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

On objects:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
C & E  \tag{2.66}\\
\downarrow \pi \mapsto & \downarrow \\
B & B
\end{array}
$$

where $E$ is the PGL $(N+1)$-principal bundle associated to $\mathbb{P}\left(\pi_{*} \omega_{C / S}^{\otimes n}\right)=\mathbb{P} / B$. We still need a morphism $E \rightarrow \bar{H}_{g, n}$ which is PGL $(N+1)$ equivariant. Consider


Now

$$
\begin{equation*}
E \times_{B} \mathbb{P}=\mathbb{P}\left(\tilde{\pi}_{*}\left(\omega_{C \times_{B} E / E}^{\otimes n}\right)\right) \tag{2.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

is trivial, because it is a principal bundle with a (tautological) section.
On morphisms we have

which implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi_{*}^{\prime}\left(\omega_{C^{\prime} / B^{\prime}}^{\otimes n}\right)=\varphi^{*} \pi_{*}\left(\omega_{C / B}^{\otimes n}\right) \tag{2.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

which leads to a cartesian square:


Remark 2.11. $p$ is fully faithful and essentially surjective. These properties have geometric meaning. The fact that $p$ is faithful tells us that a nontrivial automorphism on $C$ induces a non-trivial automorphism of $\mathbb{P}\left(H^{0}\left(\omega_{C}^{\otimes n}\right)\right)$. The fact that $p$ is full tells us that if $\Phi \in \mathrm{PGL}(N+1)$ with $\Phi(C)=C$ then $\Phi$ is induced by an automorphism of $C$, i.e. an $n$-canonical embedding is not contained in a linear subspace.

Essential surjectivity tells us the following. Let

$$
\begin{align*}
& E \rightarrow \bar{H}_{g, n} \in \operatorname{Obj}\left[\bar{H}_{g, n} / \operatorname{PGL}(N+1)\right] .  \tag{2.72}\\
& \downarrow \\
& B
\end{align*}
$$

Then we have $\pi_{E}: C_{E} \rightarrow E$ and an isomorphism

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{P}\left(\pi_{E *}\left(\omega_{C_{E} / E}\right)\right) \simeq E \times \mathbb{P}^{n} \tag{2.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then this descends to

$$
\begin{equation*}
B=E / \operatorname{PGL}(N+1), C=C_{E} / \operatorname{PGL}(N+1) \tag{2.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

Corollary 2.11. $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g}$ is a separated Deligne-Mumford stack of finite type over $S$ (e.g. $S=\mathbb{Z}, k$.)

Proof. To show this we use a criterion of [8], and for separatedness we check finiteness of $\operatorname{Iso}_{B}\left(C^{\prime}, C\right) \rightarrow B$.

See [8] for details.

### 3.2. Further properties.

Proposition 2.12. $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g}$ is proper (over $\mathbb{Z}$ or $k$ ).
Digression 1 (Properties of (morphisms) stacks). For those properties that are local in the smooth (D-M,étale) topology (flat, smooth, unramified, locally Noetherian, normal... ) we can just check it on a smooth atlas. Properness is not of this form.

Definition 2.12. A morphism of stacks $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is proper if it is separated, of finite type and universally closed (for the Zariski topology ${ }^{2.6}$ on the sets $|X|$ and $|Y|$ ).

We won't use this definition directly. One instead typically uses the valuative criteria for properness.

[^9]First we state the condition for schemes. Let $R$ be a discrete valuation ring. Write $K$ for the quotient field of $R$. Then we have


Then in this setting uniqueness of such an arrow is separatedness and existence is properness.
Now in the case of stacks, we ask for a finite extension $K^{\prime} / K$ and then write $R^{\prime}$ for the normalization of $R$ in $K^{\prime}$. Then the question is if this exists/is unique:


In moduli theory this goes by the name of stable reduction.
Consider the case $\overline{\mathcal{M}_{g}} / \operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{Z}, g \geq 2$. As it turns out
Lecture 11; October
Theorem 2.13. $\overline{\mathcal{M}_{g}}$ is proper.
By the above valuative criteria it suffices to show the following:
Theorem 2.14. Let $R$ be a $D V R, B=\operatorname{Spec} R$, and $k$ be the quotient field of $R$. Consider some stable curve $f: X_{K} \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} K$. Then there is a finite extension $K^{\prime} / K$ and a unique stable curve $X^{\prime} \rightarrow B^{\prime}, B^{\prime}=\operatorname{Spec} R^{\prime}$ where $R^{\prime}$ is the normalization of $R$ in $K^{\prime}$, with

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{K^{\prime}} \simeq X_{K} \times{ }_{\operatorname{Spec} R} \operatorname{Spec} K^{\prime} \tag{2.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

which fits into


Proof. (In characteristic 0). First extend arbitrary by projectivity as a reduced scheme:


Note that $\bar{X}$ is a surface. Now we desingularize $X \rightarrow \bar{X}$. We can do this explicitly by repeatedly blowing up. Taking the fiber at 0 gives us a nodal curve $X_{0}$, but this may not be reduced.

The DVR $R$ has a uniformizing parameter $t \in R$, so we have $m=(t)$ maximal. Now complete a base change ${ }^{2.7} t \mapsto t^{l}$ where $l$ is the least common multiple of multiplicities of $X_{0}$. This gives us $\tilde{X}^{\prime} \rightarrow B=\operatorname{Spec} R^{\prime}$ and $\tilde{X}_{0}^{\prime}$ is a reduced nodal curve. But this might not be stable. But now we can contract the nonstable cusps.

[^10]TheOrem 2.15. $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g}$ is smooth, connected, and $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g} \backslash \mathcal{M}_{g}$ (where $\mathcal{M}_{g}$ parameterizes smooth curves) is a normal crossings divisor with $\left\lfloor\frac{g+1}{2}\right\rfloor$ irreducible components.

Proof. Smoothness: We can check this on a smooth atlas $\bar{H}_{g, n} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g}$. Checking this is really just deformation theory.

Connectedness: We can define the Hurwitz space to be:

$$
\operatorname{Hur}_{k, b}=\left\{\begin{array}{l|l}
C \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{1} & \begin{array}{c}
\text { simply branched, deg }=k, \\
\text { number of branch points }=b, \\
g(c)=b / 2-k+1
\end{array} \tag{2.80}
\end{array}\right\} .
$$

Hurwitz proved that $\operatorname{Hur}_{k, b}$ is always connected, and for $k>g+1$ we have a surjection $\operatorname{Hur}_{k, b} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{g}$, so $\mathcal{M}_{g}$ is connected.

There are variations of this thing.
(a) $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{g, k}$ consists of the stable curves of genus $g$ with $k$ marked points. Then the finiteness condition on the automorphisms becomes:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Aut}(C, \underline{x})<\infty \tag{2.81}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\underline{x}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right)$. In this case $2 g-2+k>0$, so we don't allow:

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\mathcal{M}_{0,0, \ldots, \mathcal{M}_{0,2}}, \mathcal{M}_{0,3}, \mathcal{M}_{0,5}, \ldots \\
\mathcal{M}_{1,0}, \mathcal{M}_{1,1}, \ldots \\
\mathcal{M}_{2,0}, \ldots \tag{2.84}
\end{array}
$$

(b) We can also consider pre-stable curves. This just means we drop the stability condition. Fortunately the stacks project comes to our rescue here. Here everything happens in much greater generality. For example, we ask for representability of the Iso functor by algebraic spaces, and this holds very generally. This only forms an Artin stack.

## CHAPTER 3

## Gromov-Witten theory and virtual techniques

## 1. Stable maps

Let $X$ be a scheme ( $/ \mathbb{C}$ or some other field of char $=0$ ).
Definition 3.1.

$$
\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X)=\left\{\begin{array}{c|c}
C \xrightarrow{C} X & (C, \underline{x}) \in \tilde{\mathcal{M}}_{g, k}(B)  \tag{3.1}\\
\underline{x}\rceil \downarrow_{\|} & \forall \text { geom. pts } s \rightarrow B: \\
B & \# \operatorname{Aut}\left(C_{s}, \underline{x}_{s}, f_{s}\right)<\infty
\end{array}\right\}
$$

where $\tilde{\mathcal{M}}_{g, k}(B)$ is the stack of nodal curves, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Aut}\left(C_{s}, \underline{x}_{s}, f_{s}\right)=\left\{\varphi \in \operatorname{Aut}(X) \mid \varphi\left(x_{i}\right)=x_{i} \forall i, f \circ \varphi=f\right\} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The class of $f_{s}$ for $s=\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{C}$ is $f_{*}[c] \in H_{2}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ or $H_{2}(X, \mathbb{Q})$ or $A_{1}(X)$ where $[c] \in H_{2}(C, \mathbb{Z})$. For fixed $\beta \in H_{2}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ (the "degree") we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta) \subset \mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X) \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

is open.
Now we provide an explanation for this definition. Let $f:(C, \underline{x}) \rightarrow X /$ Spec $\mathbb{C}$. Then for any irreducible component $C^{\prime} \subset C$ we get a corresponding $f: C^{\prime} \rightarrow X$. There are only two possibilities, either this map is either constant or finite. If it is finite, then already \# Aut $\left(C^{\prime}, f\right)<\infty$. So really the contracted components (where $f$ is constant) are the interesting pieces.

For $g=1$ smooth, everything gets mapped to a point, so we can rule this case out. Besides this, the stability condition is equivalent to saying that any contracted component $C^{\prime} \subset C$ has at least three special points. Note that a node is two special points on the normalization. For $d=3$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ Fig. 1 shows a degeneration as embedded curves to something like $y^{2}-x^{3}=0$.

Motivation. For $\mathbb{P}^{n}(n \geq 3)$ the space of embedded curves of fixed arithmetic genus is highly singular, but from the stable maps point of view, at least for the genus 0 case:

Theorem 3.1. $\mathcal{M}_{0, k}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)$ is smooth.
Proof. First consider the stack of nodal curves (pre-stable) $\tilde{\mathcal{M}}(0, k)$. This is smooth, so it suffices to prove that the forgetful map $\mathcal{M}_{0, k}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right) \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{M}}_{0, k}$ (which sends $(C, \underline{x}, f) \mapsto$ $(C, \underline{x}))$ is a smooth morphism of stacks.


$$
f_{t} \downarrow \quad t \rightarrow 0
$$



Figure 1. Family $f_{t}$ of stable maps into $\mathbb{P}^{1}$. When we send $t \rightarrow 0$ we are forced to contract the genus one part of the curve which gives us the cusp.

This amounts to checking the following. For $\bar{I}=A / I$ (where $I^{2}=0$ ) then we have

and we want to find the dashed arrow. In other words we want to find:

I.e. given $\bar{f}$, we want to find $f$. The obstruction class is in $H^{1}\left(\bar{C}, \bar{f}^{*} \Theta_{X}\right)$. Stability from before gives us $\bar{f}^{*} \Theta_{X}$ is globally generated on each irreducible component $\bar{C}^{\prime} \subset \bar{C}$. So we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{K} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\bar{C}^{\prime}}^{\oplus l} \longrightarrow \bar{f}^{*} \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{n}}\right|_{\bar{C}^{\prime}} \longrightarrow 0 \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $g=0$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
0=H^{1}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\bar{C}^{\prime}}\right)^{\oplus l} \longrightarrow H^{1}\left(\left.\bar{f}^{*} \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{n}}\right|_{\bar{C}^{\prime}}\right) \longrightarrow H^{2}=0 \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lecture 12; October 8, 2019

Theorem 3.2. $\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta)$ is a proper, separated Deligne-Mumford stack.
Proof. Write $\mathfrak{m}_{g, k}$ for the Artin stack of nodal curves with $k$ marked points. If we have a diagram

this is really the same data as


This is really a morphism over $T$, so this tells us the following. We have that

is a universal curve, so we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}_{g} \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathfrak{m}_{g}}\left(\mathcal{C}_{g}, \mathfrak{m}_{G} \times X\right) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an Artin stack, locally of finite type.
Now since stability is open we want to show:
Lemma 3.3. This is an open substack.


Figure 2. $r+1$ hyperplanes in $\mathbb{P}^{r}$ transversely intersection $C_{s}$.

Once we fix $\beta \in H_{2}(X, \mathbb{Z})$ there are only finitely many "combinatorial types" 3.1 of stable maps. This tells us that $\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta)$ is quasi-compact.

The harder part is the stable reduction which tells that this is separated and proper. The idea (due to Fulton-Pandharipande) is that for $X \subset \mathbb{P}^{r}$ gives us the closed embedding $\mathcal{M}(X, \beta) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}\left(\mathbb{P}^{r}, d\right)$, so WLOG $X=\mathbb{P}^{r}$. The point is that $\mathcal{L}=\omega_{c} \otimes f^{*} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{r}}(1)$ is relatively ample for $C / T$. Then there exists some number $l$ depending on $g, k$, and the degree $d$ such that $\mathcal{L}^{\otimes l}$ is relatively very ample.

Consider the picture in Fig. 2. These hyperplanes $H_{i}=\left(t_{i}=0\right)$, for $t_{i} \in \Gamma\left(\mathbb{P}^{r}, \mathcal{O}(1)\right)$ give rise to additional marked points on $C$. Then locally $\mathcal{M}\left(\mathbb{P}^{r}, d\right)$ is isomorphic to the rigidified space $R$ with objects

[^11]such that we have a bunch of properties. Define
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H}_{i}=\mathcal{O}_{C}\left(q_{i, 1}+\ldots+q_{i, d}\right) \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

Then for all $i$ we require

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{*} \pi_{*}\left(\mathcal{H}_{i}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{0}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_{i}^{-1} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{0} \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an isomorphism (and for all $i, j \mathcal{H}_{i} \simeq \mathcal{H}_{j}$ ). We also require $\lambda_{0}, \ldots \lambda_{r}: T \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_{m}$ to scale the canonical section $s_{i}$ of $\mathcal{H}_{i}$.

Now the idea is to do stable reduction on the rigidified level.

## 2. GW-invariants for hypersurfaces, $g=0$

Let $X \subset \mathbb{P}^{n+1}$ be a hypersurface of degree $l, X=Z(F)$. Then $\mathcal{M}_{0}(X, d) \subset \mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}, d\right)$ is defined by the zero locus of a section of a vector bundle:


On a geometric fiber $f^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)$ has degree $\geq 0$ on each irreducible component. $g=0$ implies $H^{1}\left(f_{s}^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)\right)=0$. Then base change gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
R^{1} \pi_{*} f^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)=0 \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\mathcal{E}:=\pi_{*} f^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)$ is locally free. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{rank} \mathcal{E}=h^{0}\left(C_{s}, f_{s}^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)\right)=\operatorname{deg} f_{s}^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)+(1-g)=d l+1 \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

by Riemann-Roch. Then $F$ defines $\sigma \in \Gamma\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}\right), \mathcal{E}\right)$ with $\sigma\left(\left(C_{s}, f_{s}\right)\right)=0$, i.e. $f_{s}\left(C_{s}\right) \subset X$.

Definition 3.2 (Kontsevich).

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathcal{M}_{0}(X, d)\right]_{\mathrm{virt}}:=c_{d l+1}(\mathcal{E}) \cap\left[\mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}, d\right)\right] \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that by definition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathcal{M}_{0}(X, d)\right]_{\mathrm{virt}} \in A_{*}\left(\mathcal{M}\left(\mathbb{P}^{N+1}, d\right)\right) \rightarrow H_{2 *}\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}, d\right)\right) \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

First note that

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}, d\right) & =\operatorname{deg} f_{s}^{*} \Theta_{\mathbb{P}^{n+1}}+(n+1)(1-g)-\underbrace{3}_{\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Aut}\left(\mathbb{P}^{1}\right)}  \tag{3.20}\\
& =d(n+1)+n-2 \tag{3.21}
\end{align*}
$$

For $n=3, l=5$ we have $\operatorname{rank} \mathcal{E}=5 d+1$ and by the above computation,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{4}, d\right)=5 d+1 \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 3. Digression on intersection theory

The book $[\mathbf{1 1}]$ is a good reference. Let $X$ be a scheme over a field. We say finite sums

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum n_{i}\left[V_{i}\right] \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $V_{i} \subset C$ irreducible, reduced, closed, subschemes. A rational equivalence is generated by $W \subset X$ an irreducible subvariety, $f \in K(X) \backslash\{0\}$ a rational function. Then we can define the divisor of $f$ to be the sum over $V \subset W$ which is a codimension 1 irreducible subvariety:

$$
\begin{equation*}
[\operatorname{div}(f)]:=\sum_{V \subset W} \operatorname{ord}_{V} f \cdot[V] \tag{3.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now define the fundamental class of $X$. Write

$$
\begin{equation*}
|X|=\cup_{i} X_{i} \tag{3.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

for a decomposition into irreducible components. Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
[X]=\sum m_{i}\left[X_{i}\right] \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $m_{i}$ the length of $\mathcal{O}_{X, X_{i}}$ over $\mathcal{O}_{X, X_{i}}$.
Example 3.1. Take $X=\operatorname{Spec} A$ to be a thick point where $\operatorname{dim}_{k} A<\infty$. Then for $M \in A$-Mod we want to know the length $l$. By definition maximal sequence of submodules $M_{1} \subset \ldots M_{l}=M$ such that the quotients are just quotients by prime ideals, i.e. $M_{i+1} / M_{i} \simeq$ $A / \mathfrak{p}_{i}$ for primes $\mathfrak{p}_{i}$.

For example we can take $A=k[\epsilon] /\left(\epsilon^{k+1}\right)$. Then the length of $A$ as and $A$-module is $k+1$ which comes from the length of the sequence:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\epsilon^{k+1}\right)=0 \subset\left(\epsilon^{k}\right) \subset \ldots \subset(\epsilon) \subset A \tag{3.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

In general, for an artinian local ring we should obtain the dimension.
Then the Chow groups are

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{*}(X)=Z_{*}(X) / \sim_{\text {rat'l }} \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $*=0,1,2, \ldots$.
Example 3.2. The Chow groups vanish for affine space: $A_{*}\left(\mathbb{A}^{n}\right)=0$.
For projective space we have

$$
A_{8}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)= \begin{cases}\mathbb{Z} & i=0, \ldots, n  \tag{3.29}\\ 0 & \text { o/w }\end{cases}
$$

Lecture 13; October
Proper push-forward and flat pull-back. We will define a notion of a proper push9, 2019 forward. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a proper morphism. The definition is very simple. For $V \subset X$ a subvariety we insist that $W=f(Y)_{\text {red }} \subset Y$ is also a subvariety. This gives us a field extension $K(W) \hookrightarrow f^{\#} K(V)$. Then we define:

$$
f_{*}[V]:=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
0 & \operatorname{dim} W<\operatorname{dim} V  \tag{3.30}\\
{[K(V): K(W)] \cdot[W]} & \operatorname{dim} W=\operatorname{dim} V
\end{array} .\right.
$$

Now we have to prove
Proposition 3.4. $f_{*}[V]$ descends to $f_{*}: A_{*}(X) \rightarrow A_{*}(Y)$.

Now we need flat pullback. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a flat morphism of relative dimension $n$. Then for $V \subset Y$ a subvariety of dimension $k$, then we can pullback to get $f^{-1}(V)_{\text {red }} \subset X$ which is a union of subvarieties.

Definition 3.3. $f^{*}[V]:=\left[f^{-1}(V)\right]$.
Then we show this commutes with rational equivalence.

Excision. We now consider the form of excision we have in this "homology" theory. Consider a closed embedding $i: Y \hookrightarrow X$. Then we get an open embedding $j: X \backslash Y \hookrightarrow X$. Then we get $A_{*}(X) \xrightarrow{j_{*}} A_{*}(X \backslash Y)$, and this actually turns out to be surjective. Then we have kernel $A_{*}(Y)$, but this might not be injective. So we get an exact sequence:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{*}(Y) \longrightarrow A_{*}(X) \xrightarrow{j_{*}} A_{*}(X \backslash Y) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{3.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof.

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z_{k}(Y) \rightarrow Z_{k}(X) \rightarrow Z_{k}(X \backslash Y) \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Weil divisors. Now we have the notion of Weil divisors. Take $X$ be to be $n$-dimensional. Then the Weil divisors are

$$
\begin{equation*}
D=\sum m_{i} D_{i} \in Z_{n-1}(X) \tag{3.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

What we really want to intersect with are not these "homology" classes, but rather some "cohomology" classes called the Cartier divisors. For $X$ any scheme, we first cover $X$ by open subsets $U_{\alpha}$. Then in the total ring of quotients we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{\alpha} \in R\left(U_{\alpha}\right) \backslash\{0\} \tag{3.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

for each $U_{\alpha}$. These look like $g / h$ for $h$ a non-zero divisor. Then for all $\alpha$ and $\beta$ we want that $f_{\alpha} / f_{\beta} \in \mathcal{O}^{\times}\left(U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta}\right)$, i.e. it invertible. Then a Cartier divisor is $\left\{\left(U_{\alpha}, f_{\alpha}\right)\right\}$ which gives us an invertible sheaf $\mathcal{O}(D)$.

Let $X$ be pure $n$-dimensional. We have some kind of map from Cartier divisors to $A_{n-1}(X)$ sending

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\left(U_{\alpha}, f_{\alpha}\right)\right\} \mapsto U\left[\operatorname{div}\left(f_{\alpha}\right)\right] \tag{3.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will use the notation that $D \mapsto[D]$.
Cartier divisors. Now we study intersections with Cartier divisors. So we have $D=$ $\left\{\left(U_{\alpha}, f_{\alpha}\right)\right\}$ and some subvariety $j: V \hookrightarrow X$ of pure dimension $k$. Then we define

$$
D \cdot[V]:= \begin{cases}{\left[j^{-1} D\right]} & V \not \subset D  \tag{3.36}\\ {[C]} & C \subset V \text { Cartier div. s.t. }\left.\mathcal{O}_{V}(C) \simeq \mathcal{O}_{X}(D)\right|_{V}\end{cases}
$$

This defines:

$$
\begin{equation*}
D \cdot-: A_{k}(X) \rightarrow A_{k-1}(X) \tag{3.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

First Chern class and Segre classes. Define the first Chern class as follows. Let $L$ be a line bundle. This implies $L=\mathcal{O}_{X}(D)$ for $D$ some Cartier divisor. Then we define

$$
\begin{align*}
& A_{*}(X) \xrightarrow{c_{1}(L)} A_{*-1}(X)  \tag{3.38}\\
z= & \sum_{i} m_{i}\left[z_{i}\right] \longmapsto D \cdot z
\end{align*}
$$

To get higher Chern classes we will define the Segre class of a vector bundle $E \downarrow X$. Write $\mathcal{E}$ for the sheaf of section of $E$. Write $r$ for the rank. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\underline{\operatorname{Spec}} \operatorname{Sym}^{\bullet} \mathcal{E}^{\vee} \tag{3.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}^{\vee}=\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{O}_{X}}\left(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right) \tag{3.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the lines in $E$ form the projective bundle

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{P}(E)=\underline{\operatorname{Proj}} \operatorname{Sym}^{\bullet}\left(E^{\vee}\right) \tag{3.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

This comes with $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}(E)}(1)$. The morphism

$$
\begin{equation*}
p: \mathbb{P}(E) \rightarrow X \tag{3.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

is proper and flat, so we have the above pullback and pushforward for this morphism. Then the Segre classes (for $i \geq 0$ ) are

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i}(E): A_{k}(X) \rightarrow A_{k-i}(X) \tag{3.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{i}(E) \frown \alpha:=p_{*}\left(c_{1}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}(E)}(1)\right)^{r+i-1} \frown p^{*} \alpha\right) . \tag{3.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we want a projection formula for Segre classes, but this just follows from the formula for Cartier divisors. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be proper. For $E \downarrow Y$ a vector bundle we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{*}\left(s_{i}\left(f^{*} E\right) \frown \alpha\right)=s_{i}(E) \frown f_{*}(\alpha) \tag{3.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

Corollary 3.5. $s_{0}(E)=\mathrm{id}$.
Proof. We will use the projection formula for the inclusion of a subvariety $i: V \hookrightarrow X$. It is sufficient to show this for one variety, i.e. WLOG let $V=X$. We can compute

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{*}\left(s_{i}\left(f^{*} \alpha\right) \frown p^{*} \alpha\right)=m_{i}[X] \tag{3.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

since there are no other classes in $A_{k}(X)=\mathbb{Z} \cdot[X]$. So now we just have to compute the $m_{i}$. But this can be done locally, where we have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{P}(E)=X \times \mathbb{P}^{r-1} \tag{3.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}(E)}(1)$ is just pulled back from $\mathbb{P}^{r-1}$. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{1}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{r-1}}(1)\right)^{k-1} \frown\left[\mathbb{P}^{r-1}\right]=[\mathrm{pt}] \in A_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{r-1}\right) \tag{3.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means $m=1$.

Chern classes. Now we get Chern classes from Segre classes. We have

$$
\begin{align*}
& s_{t}(E)=\sum s_{i}(E) t^{i} \in \operatorname{End}\left(A_{*}(x)\right) \llbracket t \rrbracket  \tag{3.49}\\
& c_{t}(E)=s_{t}(E)^{-1} \tag{3.50}
\end{align*}
$$

This really needs that $s_{i} s_{j}=s_{j} s_{i}$ for all $i$ and $j$.
Then we have the sum formula which tells us that whenever we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow E^{\prime} \rightarrow E \rightarrow E^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{t}(E)=c_{t}\left(E^{\prime}\right)-c_{t}\left(E^{\prime \prime}\right) \tag{3.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

Gysin pullback. Let $V$ be a pure $k$-dimensional variety, $\iota$ a regular embedding of codimension $c$. Then this is equivalent to being locally given by $I=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, a_{d}\right) \subset A$. Note each $a_{i}$ is not a zero-divisor in $A /\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{i-1}\right)$ for $i=1, \ldots, d$. So we have a cartesian square:


For an ideal sheaf $\mathcal{I}$ we have $\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2}$ is locally free of rank $d$, so a vector bundle of rank d. Define the normal bundle

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{X / Y}=\underline{\operatorname{Spec}} \operatorname{Sym}^{\bullet} \mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2} \tag{3.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, for $\mathcal{I}$ an ideal sheaf of $W \hookrightarrow V\left(\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2}\right.$ need not be locally free in this case! $)$ we define the normal cone:


Proposition 3.6. For $V$ pure $k$ dimensional, $C_{W / V}$ is purely $k$-dimensional.
Now comes a basic construction. First write

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{0}: W \rightarrow C_{W / V} \tag{3.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the zero section. We know we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{W / V} \hookrightarrow N_{W / V} \hookrightarrow g^{*} N_{X / Y} \tag{3.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

so we can define
Definition 3.4.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\iota^{!}[V]:=s_{0}^{*}\left[C_{W / V}\right] \tag{3.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $s_{0}^{*}=\left(\pi^{*}\right)^{-1}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{*}: A_{k-d}(X) \rightarrow A_{k}(E) \tag{3.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

REmARK 3.1. Geometrically we should think of this as intersection with the zero section.
Then this makes sense since we have:

Proposition 3.7. $\pi^{*}$ is an isomorphism.
Proof. Surjectivity is easy: it follows from excision. Injectivity is harder.
Slogan: Take $C_{W / V}$, embed in $g^{*}\left(N_{X / Y}\right)$, and finally intersect with the zero-section.
This was all for one variety $V$.
Consider a diagram

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z \stackrel{\iota}{\hookrightarrow} Y \stackrel{f}{\leftarrow} X \tag{3.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lecture 14; October 15, 2019
where $\iota$ is lci. Let $W \subset X$ be a subvariety of dimension $d$. Then we get


Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{W_{z} / W}=\operatorname{Spec}_{W} \bigoplus_{d \geq 0} \mathcal{I}^{d} / \mathcal{I}^{d+1} \tag{3.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

pure of dimension $d$. Then we can pull the normal bundle back and we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{W_{Z} / W} \hookrightarrow g^{*} N_{Z / W} \tag{3.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\iota^{!}[W]:=s_{0}^{*}\left[C_{W_{Z} / W}\right] \in A_{k}\left(W_{Z}\right) \rightarrow A_{*}[X] \ldots \tag{3.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

But why the normal cone? We have something called the deformation to the normal cone. ${ }^{3.2}$ Consider $M:=\operatorname{Bl}_{X \times\{0\}} Y \times \mathbb{A}^{1}$. Over $t \in \mathbb{A}^{1} \backslash\{0\}$ we just have $X \hookrightarrow Y$. Over $t=0$

$$
\begin{equation*}
X \hookrightarrow C_{X / Y} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{P}\left(C_{X / Y} \oplus \mathbb{A}^{1}\right) \cup \mathrm{Bl}_{X} Y \tag{3.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

The point is that for problems that vary nicely in flat families and are local near $X$, such as intersection multiplicities, $X \hookrightarrow Y$ is as good as $X \hookrightarrow C_{X / Y}$.

Now we have the following application. We want to calculate the virtual fundamental class (VFC) for $\mathcal{M}_{0}(X)$ where $X=Z(f) \subset \mathbb{P}^{n+1}$ where $\operatorname{deg} f=l$. Recall we have $\mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}\right) \stackrel{\pi}{\leftarrow} \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{\varphi} \mathbb{P}^{n+1}$ and then we have a vector bundle of rank $r$

$$
\begin{gather*}
E=\pi_{*} \varphi^{*} \mathcal{O}(l)  \tag{3.66}\\
\downarrow \\
\mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}\right)=M
\end{gather*}
$$

called the deformation bundle. Then we have a section $s \in \Gamma(E)$ defined by $f$ with $(s=0)=$ $\mathcal{M}_{0}(X) \subset \mathcal{M}_{0}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n+1}\right)$. Now intersect im $(s)$ with the zero section:


[^12]Then we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
s_{0}^{!}[M] \in A_{\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{M}_{0}(X)-r}\left(\mathcal{M}_{0}(X)\right) \tag{3.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 4. Obstruction theories and VFC

4.1. The idea. This idea is from [21]. Locally, say on $U \subset \mathcal{M}$, embed $U$ in a smooth space $V$. This corresponds to an ideal sheaf $\mathcal{I}$ on $V$. Then we have the diagram:

$$
\begin{align*}
& C_{U / V}=\operatorname{Spec}_{U}\left(\bigoplus \mathcal{I}^{d} / \mathcal{I}^{d+1}\right) \longleftrightarrow N_{U / V} \\
&=\operatorname{Spec}_{U}\left(\operatorname{Sym}^{\bullet} \mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2}\right)  \tag{3.69}\\
&\left.T_{V}\right|_{U}=\operatorname{Spec}_{U}\left(\left.\operatorname{Sym}^{\bullet} \Omega_{V}\right|_{U}\right)
\end{align*} .
$$

Note that the additive action of $\left.T_{V}\right|_{U}$ leaves $C_{U / V}$ invariant.
Now we want to embed $N_{U / V} \hookrightarrow E_{1}$ into some vector bundle and globalize. (This is the same as a $\left.T_{V}\right|_{U}$ action on $C_{U / V}$.)

The patching data is as follows. Whenever we have

we get a sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.T_{V}\right|_{U} \rightarrow E_{0} \oplus N_{U / V} \rightarrow E_{1} \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we ask for it to be exact.
There are two main ways to achieve compatibility. The first is with Artin style obstruction theory as in [21]. Alternatively we could use the cotangent complex/derived categories as in $[\mathbf{3}]$. We will do this second option.
4.2. Digression on the cotangent complex. For $f: X \rightarrow Y$ we have an exact sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{*} \Omega_{Y} \rightarrow \Omega_{X} \rightarrow \Omega_{X / Y} \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $f$ smooth the arrow $f^{*} \Omega_{Y} \rightarrow \Omega_{X}$ is injective. In general, we need to replace $\Omega_{X / Y}, \Omega_{X}$, $\ldots$ by a complex $L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}, L_{Y}^{\bullet}, \ldots$ of quasi-coherent sheaves. Then in the derived category we have an exact sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ldots \rightarrow L f^{*} L_{Y}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{X}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{X / Y}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L f^{*} L_{Y}[1] \rightarrow L_{X}^{\bullet}[1] \rightarrow \ldots \tag{3.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means this is an exact triangle. This is an extension of what we started in the sense that

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{-1}\left(L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}\right) \rightarrow \underbrace{h^{0}\left(L f^{*} L_{Y}^{\bullet}\right)}_{=\Omega_{Y}} \rightarrow \underbrace{h^{0}\left(L_{X}^{\bullet}\right)}_{=\Omega_{X}} \rightarrow \underbrace{\Omega_{X / Y}}_{h^{0}\left(L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}\right)} \rightarrow 0=h^{1}\left(L f^{*} L_{Y}^{\bullet}\right) \tag{3.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we define the category $D \mathbf{Q C o h}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$. The objects are complexes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ldots \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{-2} \xrightarrow{d_{\mathcal{F}}^{-2}} \mathcal{F}^{-1} \xrightarrow{d_{\mathcal{F}}^{-1}} \mathcal{F}^{0} \rightarrow \ldots \tag{3.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
d^{\bullet}=d_{\mathcal{F}}^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}[1] \tag{3.76}
\end{equation*}
$$

The morphisms $\varphi^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}^{\bullet}$ are Hom spaces as complexes moduli homotopy, i.e. $\varphi^{\bullet} \simeq \psi^{\bullet}$ iff there exists $h^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}: \mathcal{G}^{\bullet}[-1]$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi^{\bullet}-\psi^{\bullet}=h^{\bullet} \circ d_{\mathcal{F}}^{\bullet}-d_{\mathcal{G}} \circ h^{\bullet} \tag{3.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we localize (make invertible) quasi-isomorphisms.
Therefore a morphism $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathcal{G}^{\bullet}$ in $D \mathbf{Q C o h}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ is


Now consider derived functors. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$. Then we want to define $R f_{*}$. Replace $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}$ by quasi-isomorphic complex $\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{F}}^{\bullet}$ of injective sheaves [choose one for each $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}$ ]. Then define

$$
\begin{equation*}
R f_{*} \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}:=f_{*} \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{F}}^{\bullet} \tag{3.79}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 3.2. The left-derived tensor product $\otimes^{L}$ and pullback $L f^{*}=f^{-1} \otimes^{L} \mathcal{O}_{X}$ are more subtle, but they work.

Now the cotangent complex is as follows. First consider the affine case. For a ring map $\varphi: A \rightarrow B$, we can resolve $B$ freely as an $A$ algebra. We can even do this canonically. This means we have $p_{\bullet} \rightarrow B \rightarrow 0$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\bullet}=[\ldots \rightarrow A[A[B]] \rightarrow A[B]] \tag{3.80}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then in this case:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{B / A}^{\bullet}=\Omega_{P_{\bullet} / A}^{\bullet} \otimes_{P_{\bullet}} B \tag{3.81}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
L_{B / A}^{-n}=\Omega_{P_{n} / A} \otimes_{P_{n}} B
$$

Let $X \rightarrow Y$ be a morphism of algebraic stacks. Then there is a similar "simplicial" resolution for $f^{-1} \mathcal{O}_{Y} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X}$. See [19] or the stacks project for more information.

The following is important. We can always embed in something smooth:


Now writing $\mathcal{I}=\mathcal{I}_{X / Z}$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau_{\geq-1} L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}=[\mathcal{I} / \mathcal{I}^{2} \rightarrow \underbrace{\left.\mathcal{O}_{Z / Y}\right|_{X}}_{\iota^{*} \Omega_{Z / Y}}] \tag{3.84}
\end{equation*}
$$

I.e. at the level of linear fibre spaces:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\left.T_{Z / Y}\right|_{X} \rightarrow N_{X / Z}\right] \tag{3.85}
\end{equation*}
$$

as needed for the globalization of $C_{X / Z} \hookrightarrow N_{X / Z}$.

### 4.3. Behrend-Fantechi definition.

Definition 3.5. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a morphism of algebraic stacks. Assume $X$ is Deligne-Mumford. A perfect obstruction theory on $X / Y$ is a 2-term complex $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}=$ $\left[\mathcal{F}^{-1} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{0}\right]$ of locally free coherent sheaves, together with a morphism (in $D \mathbf{Q C o h}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ )

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{X / Y}^{\bullet} \tag{3.86}
\end{equation*}
$$

such that
(1) $h^{0}\left(\varphi^{\bullet}\right)$ is an isomorphism,
(2) $h^{-1}\left(\varphi^{\bullet}\right)$ is an epimorphism.

The point is the following. Locally embed $X$ in some smooth space $Z$ over $Y$

Lecture 15; October 17, 2019


Assuming $\varphi^{\bullet}$ is an honest morphism of complexes, then we already know that $\tau L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}=$ $\left[\mathcal{I} /\left.\mathcal{I}^{2} \rightarrow \Omega_{Z / Y}\right|_{X}\right]$. In this situation we get a commutative diagram


This gives us a complex

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{-1} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{0} \oplus \mathcal{I} /\left.\mathcal{I}^{2} \rightarrow \Omega_{Z / Y}\right|_{X} \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.89}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we can ask for exactness at the different terms. At the first term this is equivalent to $h^{-1}\left(\varphi^{\bullet}\right)$ is injective. At the second term this is equivalent to $h^{-1}\left(\varphi^{\bullet}\right)$ surjective and $h^{0}\left(\varphi^{0}\right)$ is injective. Then at the third term this is equivalent to $h^{0}\left(\varphi^{\bullet}\right)$ being surjective.

The conditions in the definition of the definition of a perfect obstruction theory give us that the following sequence is exact:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.0 \rightarrow T_{Z / Y}\right|_{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{0} \oplus N_{Z / X} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{1} \tag{3.90}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{F}_{i}=L\left(\mathcal{F}^{-i}\right)=\operatorname{Spec}_{X} \operatorname{Sym}^{\bullet} \mathcal{F}^{-i}$.
Lemma 3.8. (a) There exists a unique cone $C_{\varphi} \bullet \subset \mathcal{F}_{1}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.0 \rightarrow T_{Z / Y}\right|_{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{0} \oplus C_{Z / X} \rightarrow C_{\varphi} \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.91}
\end{equation*}
$$

exact.
(b) $C_{\varphi} \cdot$ is independent of the choice of $Z$ and is invariant under homotopy of complexes.

Proof. (a) $\mathcal{F}_{1}$ is locally free, so we can split the sequence (3.90), then it is trivial.
(b) For two choices $Z$ and $Z^{\prime}$ we have


This was the sort of patching picture. There is a more intrinsic story in [3]. This is not so bad if we are okay with Artin stacks. Now define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}_{X / Y}=\left[N_{X / Z} /\left.T_{Z / Y}\right|_{X}\right] \tag{3.93}
\end{equation*}
$$

called the intrinsic normal sheaf, and the intrinsic normal cone

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{C}_{X / Y}=\left[\mathcal{C}_{X / Z} /\left.T_{Z / Y}\right|_{X}\right] \tag{3.94}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is pure 0 -dimensional.
For $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}$ we get also get a stack

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{0} / h^{1}\left(\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right)=\left[F_{1} / F_{0}\right] \tag{3.95}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\varphi^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}$ is a perfect obstruction theory iff

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}_{X / Y} \hookrightarrow h^{0} / h^{1}\left(\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right) \tag{3.96}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a monomorphism. Then in this case we construct $C_{\varphi}$ as follows:


So why is this called obstruction theory? As usual, consider a lifting problem. Take a square zero extension $T \hookrightarrow \bar{T}$. I.e. an ideal sheaf $\mathcal{I}=\mathcal{I}_{T / \bar{T}}$ such that $\mathcal{I}^{2}=0$. Then consider the diagram

Functoriality of $L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}$ gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
[L h^{*} L_{X / Y}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{T / \bar{T}}^{\bullet} \rightarrow \underbrace{\tau_{\geq-1} L_{T / \bar{T}}^{\bullet}}_{\mathcal{I}[1]}]=\operatorname{Obj}(h) \in \operatorname{Ext}^{1}\left(L h^{\bullet} L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{I}\right) \tag{3.99}
\end{equation*}
$$

FACT 2. $\operatorname{Obj}(h)=0$ iff $\tilde{g}$ exists. And then the collection of lifts $\tilde{g}$ modulo isomorphism is a torsor under $\operatorname{Ext}^{0}\left(L h^{*} L_{X / Y}^{\bullet} \mathcal{I}\right)$.

Proposition $3.9([3]) . \varphi^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}$ is a perfect obstruction iff the analogue of the first condition holds for

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi^{*} \operatorname{Obj}(h) \in \operatorname{Ext}^{1}(\underbrace{h^{*} \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}}_{L h^{*} \mathcal{F} \bullet}, \mathcal{I}) \tag{3.100}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the analogue of the second condition holds for $\operatorname{Ext}^{0}\left(h^{*} \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{I}\right)$. This is also equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}_{X / Y} \rightarrow\left[\mathcal{F}_{n} / \mathcal{F}_{0}\right]=h^{0} / h^{1}\left(\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right) \tag{3.101}
\end{equation*}
$$

being an embedding.
THEOREM 3.10. $\mathcal{M}_{X / Y}$ is a universal (minimal) "obstruction theory", but not a vector bundle stack unless $X / Y$ lci. $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}$ provides an embedding into the vector bundle stack $\left[\mathcal{F}_{1} / \mathcal{F}_{0}\right]$.

The virtual fundamental class is

$$
\begin{equation*}
[X]_{\mathrm{virt}, \varphi} \bullet:=s_{0}^{!}\left[C_{\varphi} \bullet\right] \in A_{*}(X) \tag{3.102}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $s_{0}: X \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{1}$ the zero section.

### 4.4. Obstruction theory for GW-theory.

Warning 3.1. $X$ is now the target, i.e. not the $X$ from the previous subsection.
Write $\mathcal{M}=\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta)$ (and similarly $\mathfrak{m}=\mathfrak{m}_{g, k}$ ) for the moduli space of stable maps to $X$ of genus $g$ with $k$ marked points, $\beta \in H_{2}(X, \mathbb{Z})$.

Now we want to construct $\varphi^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L^{\bullet}$ for GW theory. We want to work relative to the Artin stack $\mathcal{M} / \mathfrak{m}$.

We have a universal diagram

where the square is cartesian. We have a complex in degree -1 and 0 :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\omega_{\pi}=\left[\omega_{\mathcal{C} / \mathcal{M}} \rightarrow 0\right] \tag{3.104}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{*} \Omega_{X}=L f^{*} L_{X}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{\mathcal{C}}^{\bullet} \rightarrow L_{\mathcal{C} / \overline{\mathcal{C}}}^{\bullet}=\pi^{*} L_{\mathcal{M} / \mathfrak{m}}^{\bullet} \tag{3.105}
\end{equation*}
$$

since $\mathcal{C} / \mathfrak{m}$ is flat. Then taking $R \pi_{*}\left(\cdot \otimes \omega_{\pi}\right)$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi^{\bullet}: R \pi_{*}\left(f^{*} \Omega_{X} \otimes \omega_{\pi}\right) \rightarrow R \pi_{*}\left(\pi^{*} L_{\mathcal{M} / \mathfrak{m}}^{\bullet} \otimes \omega_{\pi}\right)=L_{\mathcal{M} / \mathfrak{m}} \otimes R \pi\left(\omega_{\pi}\right) \xrightarrow[\sim]{\operatorname{tr}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{M}} \tag{3.106}
\end{equation*}
$$

So we just need to show:
Lemma 3.11. $R \pi_{*}\left(f^{*} \Omega_{X} \otimes \omega_{\pi}\right)$ is quasi-isomorphic to a two term complex of locally frees $\left[\mathcal{F}^{-1} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{0}\right]$.

Proof.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{L}:=\omega_{\mathcal{C} / \mathcal{M}}(\underline{x}) \otimes f^{*}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}(1)\right)^{\otimes 3} \tag{3.107}
\end{equation*}
$$

is relatively ample for $\mathcal{C} / \mathcal{M}$. Write $E:=f^{*} \Omega_{X} \otimes \omega_{\pi}$. For $N \gg 0$ we have

- $\pi^{*} \pi_{*}\left(E \otimes \mathcal{L}^{\otimes N}\right) \rightarrow E \otimes \mathcal{L}^{\otimes n}$ is surjective.
- $R^{1} \pi_{*}\left(E \otimes \mathcal{L}^{\otimes N}\right)=0$.
- For all geometric points $s \rightarrow \mathcal{M} H^{0}\left(C_{s}, \mathcal{L}^{\otimes-N}\right)=0$.

Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}:=\pi^{*} \pi_{*}\left(E \otimes \mathcal{L}^{\otimes N}\right) \otimes \mathcal{L}^{\otimes-N} \tag{3.108}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is in fact a vector bundle. If we define $H=\operatorname{ker}(F \rightarrow E)$, then we have an exact sequence of vector bundles

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow H \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow E \rightarrow 0 \tag{3.109}
\end{equation*}
$$

is exact.
Note that

$$
\begin{align*}
H^{0}\left(C_{s}, \mathcal{F}\right) & =H^{0}\left(C_{s}, \pi_{*}\left(E \otimes \mathcal{L}^{N}\right)\right)  \tag{3.110}\\
& =\underbrace{H^{0}\left(C_{s}, \mathcal{L}_{s}^{-N}\right)}_{=0} \otimes \pi_{*}\left(E \otimes \mathcal{L}^{N}\right)_{s}=0 \tag{3.111}
\end{align*}
$$

This implies $\pi_{*} \mathcal{F}=0$, which implies $\pi_{*} H=0$. Therefore $R^{1} \pi_{*} \mathcal{F}$ and $R^{-1} \pi_{*} H$ are locally free. By (3.109) we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
R \pi_{*} E=\left[R^{1} \pi_{*} H \rightarrow R^{1} \pi_{*} \mathcal{F}\right] \tag{3.112}
\end{equation*}
$$

4.5. GW-invariants. Let $X$ be smooth, $\operatorname{dim} X=n$. Fix $g, k$, and $\beta$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathcal{M}_{g, k}\right]_{\mathrm{virt}, \varphi} \bullet \in A_{d}\left(\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta)\right) \tag{3.113}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is invariant udner deformations of $X$. Explicitly, the dimension is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
d=\underbrace{3 g-3+k}_{\operatorname{dim} \mathfrak{m}_{g, k}}+c_{1}(X) \beta+n(1-g) \tag{3.114}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the second term comes from Riemann-Roch for vector bundle of rank $n, \operatorname{deg}=c_{1}(X)$, $\beta=\operatorname{deg} f_{s}^{*} \Theta_{X}$. I.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
d=c_{1}(X) \beta+(n-3)(1-g)+k \tag{3.115}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is called the expected dimension, i.e. it is $\operatorname{rank}\left(\mathcal{F}_{n}\right)-\operatorname{rank}\left(\mathcal{F}_{0}\right)+\operatorname{dim} Y$ for $\varphi^{\bullet}: \mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \rightarrow$ $L_{X / Y}^{\bullet}$.

For CY 3-folds, $n=3$ and $k=0$, so $d=0$.
Lecture 16; October 22, 2019

For other cases, we have two natural maps:

$$
\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta) \longrightarrow \underbrace{\text { ev }}_{k}
$$

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left(C, \underline{x}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right), f\right) \stackrel{\text { ev }}{\longrightarrow}\left(f\left(x_{1}\right), \ldots, f\left(x_{k}\right)\right)  \tag{3.116}\\
\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{M}_{g, k}(C, \underline{x}) \\
(C, \underline{x}, f) \longmapsto(X, \underline{x})^{\mathrm{st}}
\end{gather*}
$$

where $\mathcal{M}_{g, k}$ is the DM-stack of stable curves.
Then we get the GW-invariants. For $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{k} \in H^{*}(X), \gamma \in H^{*}\left(\mathcal{M}_{g, k}\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\left[\mathcal{M}_{g, k}(X, \beta)\right]_{\mathrm{virt}}} \mathrm{ev}^{*}\left(\alpha_{1} \times \ldots \times \alpha_{k}\right) \smile \gamma=:\left\langle\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{k} ; \gamma\right\rangle_{\mathrm{GW}}^{g, k, \beta} \tag{3.117}
\end{equation*}
$$

4.6. Deformation invariance of GW. Consider a family

$$
\begin{align*}
& X \\
& \downarrow^{q}  \tag{3.118}\\
& S
\end{align*}
$$

of proper smooth varieties. We want to compare GW theory of fibers, and morally we want to say they are the same.
$\beta \in H_{2}\left(X_{s}\right)$ obtain a class in $H_{2}\left(X_{s^{\prime}}\right)$ for all $s^{\prime}$ (well-defined up to monodromy). Write $\iota_{s}: X_{s} \hookrightarrow X$. Take $\mathcal{M}=\mathcal{M}_{g, k}\left(X,\left(i_{s}\right)_{*} \beta\right)$. Then

and we can pull back our class

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathcal{M}_{S}\right]_{\mathrm{virt}}:=j_{s}^{!}[\mathcal{M}]_{\mathrm{virt}} \tag{3.120}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proposition 3.12. If $S$ is lci, then for all $s$, $s^{\prime}$ we get an algebraic equivalence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathcal{M}_{s}\right]_{v i r t} \sim\left[\mathcal{M}_{s^{\prime}}\right]_{v i r t} \tag{3.121}
\end{equation*}
$$

in $A_{*}(\mathcal{M})$. In particular, $G W$ invariants of $X_{s}$ and $X_{s^{\prime}}$ agree.

## CHAPTER 4

## Toric geometry

We will work over a field ${ }^{4.1} k$. The slogan is that toric geometry is
the study of equivariant compactifications of $\left(\mathbb{G}_{m}\right)^{n}$.
Recall $\mathbb{G}_{m}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[z, z^{-1}\right]$ is the algebraic geometer's version of $\mathbb{C}^{\times}$. The point will be that $\left(\mathbb{G}_{m}\right)^{n} \subset X$ is captured by combinatorial geometry ( $\mathbb{Z}$-cones). References are $[\mathbf{7}, \mathbf{1 0}, \mathbf{2 4}]$.

## 1. Monoids and cones

Let $M$ be a free abelian group of $\operatorname{rank} d\left(\simeq \mathbb{Z}^{d}\right)$. Write $N=\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(M, \mathbb{Z})$ for the dual. Write

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{\mathbb{Q}}=M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q}=\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(N, \mathbb{Q}) \quad M_{\mathbb{R}}=M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{R}=M_{\mathbb{Q}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{R} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly

$$
\begin{equation*}
N \subset N_{\mathbb{Q}} \subset N_{\mathbb{R}} \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition 4.1. Let $V$ be a vector space over $\mathbb{Q}$ or $\mathbb{R}$. $C \subset V$ is called a cone if $0 \in C$, and for all $\lambda>0$ we have $\lambda C \subset C$. We say $C$ is convex if $C+C \subset C$.

Remark 4.1. $C$ is convex iff $\mathrm{Cl}(C) \subset V_{\mathbb{R}}$ is a convex set.
Lemma 4.1. If $C \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$ is a convex cone then $(C \cap M,+)$ is a saturated monoid. The additive unit is the origin, and this is commutative.

Recall saturated tells us that for all $m \in M$ and for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{N} \backslash\{0\}, \lambda m \in C$ implies $m \in C$. So the group is trivial.

Example 4.1. $M=\mathbb{Z}, P=2 \mathbb{N}+3 \mathbb{N} .1 \in M, 2 \in P$, but $1 \notin P$, so this is not saturated.
Example 4.2. Consider $C=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(0,1)+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(k+1,-1) \subset \mathbb{R}^{2}$. Then

$$
C \cap M=\langle(0,1),(1,0),(k+1,-1)\rangle . \cong \mathbb{N}^{3} /\left\langle\left(\begin{array}{c}
0  \tag{4.3}\\
k+1 \\
0
\end{array}\right),\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
0 \\
1
\end{array}\right)\right\rangle
$$

I.e. the only relation is $u+v=(k+1) w$.

It is a general fact that $M \subset \mathbb{Z}^{d}$ satisfies $M \simeq \mathbb{N}^{d}$ iff there exists $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{d} \in M$ such that $\operatorname{det}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{d}\right)= \pm 1$. So the proof follows from

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 0  \tag{4.4}\\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right)=1 \quad \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
k+1 & 1 \\
-1 & 0
\end{array}\right)=1 .
$$

[^13]
## 2. Monoid rings

Definition 4.2. Let $S$ be a monoid, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
k[S]:=\left(\left\{\sum_{\text {fin. }} a_{m} \chi^{m}\right\} \mid \chi^{m} \cdot \chi^{m^{\prime}}=\chi^{m+m^{\prime}}\right) \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the associated monoid ring.
The first question is when $k[S]$ is finitely generated. It is sufficient for $S$ to be a finitely generated monoid.

Example 4.3. Set $C=0 \cup\left(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \times \mathbb{R}_{>0}\right)$. Then $S=C \cap M$ is not finitely generated since $(a, 1)$ are generators for all $a \in \mathbb{N}$.

## 3. Rational polyhedral cones and the Lemma of Gordan

Definition 4.3. A cone $C \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$ is a rational polyhedral if there are $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{r} \in M_{\mathbb{Q}}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
C=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} m_{1}+\ldots+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} m_{r} \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note this implies $C \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$ is closed and convex.
Proposition 4.2 (Lemma of Gordon). If $C \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$ is rational polyhedral, then $C \cap M$ is finitely generated.

Note this also implies $k[C \cap M]$ is a finitely generated $k$-algebra.
Proof. By the assumption that we have such $m_{i}$, we get that

$$
\begin{equation*}
K=\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{r} t_{i} m_{i} \mid 0 \leq t_{i} \leq 1\right\} \subset M_{\mathbb{R}} \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

is compact. This means $K \cap M$ is finite.
Claim 4.1. $K \cap M$ generates $C \cap M$.
Consider $u=\sum r_{i} m_{i}$ for $r_{i} \geq 0$. Then we can write $r_{i}=s_{i}+t_{i}$ for $s_{i} \in \mathbb{N}, t_{i} \in[0,1]$. This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
u=\sum \underbrace{s_{i} m_{i}}_{\in K \cap M}+\sum \underbrace{t_{i} m_{i}}_{K \cap M} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

so we are finished.

## 4. Facts from convex geometry

Lecture 17; October 24, 2019

Now we list some definitions/propositions. Let $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ be a polyhedral cone.
(a) The dual cone is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma^{\vee}=\left\{u \in M_{\mathbb{R}} \mid \forall v \in \sigma,\langle u, v\rangle \geq 0\right\} \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

FACT 3. - $\sigma$ polyhedral implies $\sigma^{\vee}$

- $\sigma=\left(\sigma^{\vee}\right)^{\vee}$
- $\left(\sigma_{1} \cap \sigma_{2}\right)^{\vee}=\sigma_{1}^{\vee}+\sigma_{2}^{\vee}$
(b) $\sigma+(-\sigma)=\mathbb{R} \sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ is the linear subspace spanned by $\sigma$. We define $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{R}} \sigma:=$ $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{R} \cdot \sigma$.
(c) $\sigma$ is called sharp if $\sigma \cap(-\sigma)=\{0\}$.

FACT 4. TFAE:
(i) $\sigma$ is sharp
(ii) $\operatorname{dim} \sigma^{\vee}=d$
(iii) $\exists u \in \sigma^{\vee}, \sigma \cap u^{\perp}=\{0\}$

In Toric geometry, cones in $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ are always sharp and cones in $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ are always $d$-dimensional.
(d) Reduction of non-sharp cones: for $C=\sigma^{\vee}, L=C \cap(-C)=\sigma^{\perp}=(\mathbb{R} \sigma)^{\perp}$. This is the largest linear subspace contained in $C$. Moreover, there exists a sharp cone $\bar{C} \subset M_{\mathbb{R}} / L$. Note this is the image $q(C)$ where $q: M_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow M_{\mathbb{R}} / L$, so $C=q^{-1}(\bar{C})$. Now we split (non-canonically) $M_{\mathbb{R}} \simeq L \oplus M_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}$ and $M_{\mathbb{R}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} M_{\mathbb{R} / L}$. In other words $C \simeq \bar{C} \times L$.
(e) A cone $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ is polyhedral iff $\sigma$ is the intersection of finitely many half spaces. SKETCH PROOF. $\sigma^{\vee}=\sum \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} u_{i}$ is equivalent to $\sigma=\bigcap_{i} H_{i}$ for $H_{i}=\left(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} u_{i}\right)^{\vee}$.
(f) $u^{\perp} \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}, u \neq 0$, is called a supporting hyperplane if $\sigma \subset\left(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} u\right)^{\vee}$.
(g) A face $\tau \subseteq \sigma$ is $u^{\perp} \cap \sigma$ with $u \in \sigma^{\vee}$.

FACT 5. • Any face is a rational polyhedral cone.

- The topological boundary $\partial \sigma$ is the union of faces $\tau \subsetneq \sigma$ in $\mathbb{R} \cdot \sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$.
- Let $\tau_{1}, \tau_{2} \subset \sigma$ be faces. Then $\tau_{1} \cap \tau_{2} \subset \sigma$ is a face.
- For $\tau_{1} \subseteq \tau_{2}$ faces and $\operatorname{dim} \tau_{1}=\operatorname{dim} \tau_{2}$ we actually have $\tau_{1}=\tau_{2}$.
- $\min (\operatorname{dim} \tau)=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{R}} \sigma \cap(-\sigma)$ where min ranges over faces $\tau$.
(h) $\tau \subseteq \sigma$ is a facet if $\operatorname{dim} \tau=\operatorname{dim} \sigma-1$.

Fact 6. - Any face $\tau \subset \sigma$ is an intersection of facets.

- Any face $\omega \subset \sigma$ of codimension 2 (i.e. $\operatorname{dim} \omega=\operatorname{dim} \sigma-2$ ) is contained in exactly 2 facets.
(i) A face of dim $=1$ is called an extremal ray If

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} n_{1}+\ldots+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} n_{r} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

then any extremal ray is of the form $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} n_{i}$ for some $i$. $r$ is minimal iff each $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} n_{i}$ is an extremal ray.
(j) The map taking faces $\tau \subset \sigma$ to faces $C \subseteq \sigma^{\vee}$ taking $\tau \mapsto \tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}$ is an inclusion reversing and dimension reversing bijection.

## 5. Affine toric varieties

Fix a field $k$.
Definition 4.4. A $d$-dimensional affine toric variety is a scheme of the form Spec $k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$ for $\sigma \in N_{\mathbb{R}}$ a rational polyhedral cone.

Note that since $k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] \subset k[M]$ is a localization, we have that $\mathbb{T}_{N}=\operatorname{Spec} k[M] \subset$ Spec $k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$ is an open embedding.

Remark 4.2. The lemma of Gordan implies that these affine toric varieties are of finite type over $k$.

Proposition 4.3. If $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{s} \in M$ generated $\sigma^{\vee} \cap M$ as a monoid, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
I=\operatorname{ker}\left(q: k\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{s}\right] \rightarrow k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]\right)=\operatorname{ker}\left(x_{1}^{a_{1}} \ldots x_{s}^{a_{s}} \mapsto \chi^{a_{1} m_{1}+\ldots+a_{s} m_{s}}\right) \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

is generated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
G=\left\{x_{1} a^{1} \ldots x_{s}^{a_{s}}-x_{1}^{b_{1}} \ldots x_{s}^{b_{s}} \mid \sum a_{i} m_{i}=\sum b_{i} m_{i} ; a_{i}, b_{i} \geq 0\right\} \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. The map $q$ is homogeneous where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{deg} x_{i}:=m_{i} \quad \operatorname{deg} \chi^{m}=m \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

This implies $I$ is an $M$-homogeneous ideal, which implies $I$ is generated by $M$-homogeneous expressions.

For $f=\sum \alpha_{A} x^{A} \in I$ homogeneous,

$$
\sum \alpha_{i} m_{i}=m \quad q(f)=\left(\sum \alpha_{A}\right) \chi^{m}
$$

so $f \in I$ iff $\sum \alpha_{A}=0$. Descending induction on the number of the nonzero $a_{i}$ s, replace $x^{A}$ by $x^{A^{\prime}}$ via $x^{A}-x^{A^{\prime}} \in G \subseteq I$.

REmARK 4.3. Ideals generated by elements of the form of the elements of $G$ are called toric.

## 6. $k$-rational points

Recall for a scheme $X$, and any field $K$, we can form the set of $K$-valued points (the scheme theoretic points)

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(K):=\left\{x \in X \mid \kappa(x)=\mathcal{O}_{X, x} / \mathfrak{m}_{x} \simeq K\right\} \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is sometimes called the maximal spectrum m-Spec.
Remark 4.4. For $k$ algebraically closed, and $X / k$ is of finite type, then $X(k)$ is just the closed points.

Proposition 4.4. If $X=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$ then

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(k)=\operatorname{Hom}_{\text {Mon }}\left(\sigma^{\vee} \cap M,(k, \cdot)\right) \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note this is the multiplicative monoid $(k, \cdot)$.
Proof. We know

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(k)=\mathrm{m}-\operatorname{Spec}\left(k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]\right)=\operatorname{Hom}_{k-\operatorname{Alg}}\left(k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right], k\right) \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we regard $k$ as a ring. Then we map $\Phi \rightarrow \varphi$ to get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}_{\text {Mon }}\left(\sigma^{\vee} \cap M,(k, \cdot)\right) \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 4.4. Let $C=M_{\mathbb{R}}$. Now we consider $\operatorname{Hom}(M,(k, \cdot))$. Everything in $M$ is invertible, so this is the same as $\operatorname{Hom}_{\text {Mon }}\left(M, k^{\times}\right)=N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} k^{\times} \simeq\left(k^{\times}\right)^{d}$.

Example 4.5. Let $C=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]=k[x, y] \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x=\chi^{(1,0)}$ and $y=\chi^{(0,1)}$. Each $\varphi$ takes $x \mapsto \lambda$ and $y \mapsto \mu$. This gives us that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}\left(\sigma^{\vee} \cap M,(k, \cdot)\right)=k^{2} \tag{4.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $X=\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{C}\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$. In fact, there exists a map

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \sigma^{\vee} \tag{4.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is a kind of "momentum map". The fibers over points $p \in \sigma^{\vee}$ contained in the interior of a $k$-dimensional face $\tau \subseteq \sigma$ are isomorphic to $\left(S^{1}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} \tau}$.

Example 4.6. Consider the map $\mathbb{C}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2} . \operatorname{Map}(\lambda, \mu) \mapsto(|\lambda|,|\mu|)$.

## 7. Toric open subschemes

Recall the following. For $f \in R, D_{f}=\operatorname{Spec} R_{f} \subset \operatorname{Spec} R$ is a fundamental open subset.
Proposition 4.5. Let $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ be a rational polyhedral cone and $\tau \subseteq \sigma$ a face. Then $\sigma^{\vee} \hookrightarrow \tau^{\vee}$ defines a homomorphism

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] \hookrightarrow k\left[\tau^{\vee} \cap M\right] \tag{4.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

The statement is that this is a localization at one element. In particular

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{\tau}:=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\tau^{\vee} \cap M\right] \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Spec} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]=: U_{\tau}=X \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a fundamental open subscheme.
Proof. Write $\tau=\sigma \cap m^{\perp}$, for $m \in \sigma^{\vee} \cap M$. This means $m(\sigma \backslash \tau) \subset \mathbb{N} \backslash\{0\}$. Then we claim:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau^{\vee} \cap M=\sigma^{\vee} \cap M+\mathbb{N} \cdot(-m) \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

The inclusion $\supseteq$ is clear. So consider $u \in \tau^{\vee} \cap M$. We know $u+\lambda m \in \sigma^{\vee}$ for $\lambda \gg 0$. Write $\sigma=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} n_{1}+\ldots+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} n_{s}$. So we need to show that for all $i\left\langle u+\lambda m, n_{i}\right\rangle \geq 0$ for $\lambda \gg 0$. Write $\left\langle u+\lambda m, n_{i}\right\rangle=\left\langle u, n_{i}\right\rangle+\lambda\left\langle m, n_{i}\right\rangle$. Then we have two cases. If $n_{i} \in \tau$ we have that these terms are individually zero, and the whole thing is $>0$ for $n_{i} \in \sigma \backslash \tau$. $\left\langle u+\lambda m, n_{i}\right\rangle \geq 0$. Therefore for all $u \in \tau^{\vee} \cap M$ we have $u+\lambda m \in \sigma^{\vee}$ for $\lambda \gg 0$. This implies $k\left[\tau^{\vee} \cap M\right]=k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]_{\chi^{m}} \subset k[M]$.

Definition 4.5. $U_{\tau}:=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\tau^{\vee} \cap M\right] \subset X$ is a fundamental open set.
Example 4.7. Let $\sigma=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2} \subseteq N_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$. Write $\tau_{1}$ for the vertical face, $\tau_{2}$ for the horizontal face, and 0 for the origin as a face. Then $\tau_{1}^{\vee}$ is the upper half plane, and $\tau_{2}^{\vee}$ is the right half plane. $0^{\vee}$ is the whole plane. Then

$$
\begin{align*}
U_{\tau_{1}} & =\operatorname{Spec} k[x, y]_{x}=\mathbb{G}_{m} \times \mathbb{A}^{1}  \tag{4.25}\\
U_{\tau_{2}} & =\operatorname{Spec} k[x, y]_{y}=\mathbb{A}^{1} \times \mathbb{G}_{m}  \tag{4.26}\\
U_{0} & =\operatorname{Spec} k[x, y]_{x, y}=\mathbb{G}_{m}^{2} \tag{4.27}
\end{align*}
$$

## 8. Rational functions, dimension and normality

Proposition 4.6. Consider a rational polyhedral cone $C \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$. Write

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=\mathbb{R} \cdot C=C+(-C) \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then
(a)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { Quot } k[C \cap M]=\text { Quot } k[L \cap M]=k(L \cap M) \tag{4.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

(b) Any affine toric variety is normal.
(c) $\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{Spec} k[C \cap M])=\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{R}} L$.

Proof. (a) This is clear.
(b) For $C=v_{1}^{\vee} \cap \ldots \cap v_{r}^{\vee}$ an intersection of half-spaces we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
C \cap M=\bigcap_{i=1}^{r}\left(M \cap v_{i}^{\vee}\right) \tag{4.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies

$$
k[C \cap M]=\bigcap k\left[M \cap v_{i}^{\vee}\right] \subset k[M] .
$$

The intersection of normal rings is normal, and

$$
k\left[M \cap v_{i}^{\vee}\right] \simeq k\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x_{d}\right]_{x_{d}}
$$

is the localization of a polynomial ring and hence normal so we are done.
(c) Spec $k[C \cap M]$ contains Spec $k[L \cap M] \simeq \mathbb{G}_{m}^{\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{R}} L}$ as an open dense subset.

## 9. Toric strata

These are the closures of $\mathbb{G}_{m}^{d}$ orbits.
Lemma 4.7. Let $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ be a rational, sharp polyhedral cone. Write $\operatorname{dim} N_{\mathbb{R}}=d$. Take $\tau \subset \sigma$ to be a face with $L=\mathbb{R} \tau=\tau+(-\tau)$ the linear span of $\tau$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}=L^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee} \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

is the dual cone of $\sigma / L$ in $N_{\mathbb{R}} / L . \sigma$ has an image $\sigma / L$ in $N_{\mathbb{R}} / L$ which is again sharp.
So we have $\sigma \rightarrow \sigma / L$, and $(\sigma / L)^{*}=\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}$. Therefore, dualizing yields a map

$$
\begin{equation*}
j\left[\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M\right] \hookrightarrow k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] \tag{4.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives rise a dominant ${ }^{4.2}$ morphism

$$
\begin{equation*}
\underbrace{\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]}_{=X=U_{\sigma}} \xrightarrow{\pi} \underbrace{\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M\right]}_{U_{\sigma / L}} . \tag{4.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

This map is as follows. For $L \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ rational, we get $M_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow M_{\mathbb{R}} / L^{\perp}$ which gives rise to a torus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{T}_{L}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[M /\left(L^{\perp} \cap M\right)\right] \subset \mathbb{T}=\mathbb{G}_{m}^{d} \tag{4.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

This torus has an action on the fibers of this map. So it turns out, $\pi$ is the categorical quotient ${ }^{4.3}$ of $X$ by $\mathbb{T}_{L}$.

Now we want to construct a section $\iota: U_{\sigma / L} \rightarrow U_{\sigma}$. We know $\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee} \subset \sigma^{\vee}$ is a face. Then we define the ideal

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{\tau}=\left(\chi^{m}\right)_{m \in\left(\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right) \backslash \tau^{\perp}} \subset k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] \tag{4.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the quotient by it defines the map $\iota^{*}$. We want to see this pre-composes with $\pi$ to get an isomorphism on $U_{\sigma / L}$. Recall we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M\right] \xrightarrow{\pi^{*}} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] \xrightarrow{\iota^{*}} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] / I_{\tau} \tag{4.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^14]which induces an obvious bijection between the $k$-vector space basis elements given by monomials $\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M$, which implies $\pi \circ \iota=\mathrm{id}$.

REmark 4.5. Note that $k\left[\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M\right]=k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]^{\mathbb{T}_{L}}$ and for $m \in \sigma^{\vee} \cap M$ and $q: M \rightarrow M / L \operatorname{deg}_{\mathbb{T}_{L}} \chi^{m}=q(m)$.

DEfinition 4.6. Closed subschemes of the form $U_{\sigma / L} \subseteq U_{\sigma}$ are called toric strata (in particular, toric varieties themselves for $\left.\mathbb{T}_{L}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\tau^{\perp} \cap M\right]\right)$.

Example 4.8. Take $\tau=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \times\{0\} \subset \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2}=\sigma . \tau^{\perp}$ is the horizontal half line sitting inside of $\sigma^{\vee}$. Writing the generators of $\sigma^{\vee}$ as $x$ and $y$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M\right]=k[Y] \hookrightarrow k[x, y] \tag{4.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

which corresponds to the map $\mathbb{A}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{1}$ sending $(x, y) \mapsto y$. In this case $U_{\sigma / L}=Z(x)$, i.e. the $y$-axis.

Example 4.9. Take

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma^{\vee}=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(1,0,0)+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(1,1,0)+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(1,1,1)+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(1,0,1) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{3} \tag{4.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

Write the generators as $x, z, y$, and $w$ respectively. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]=k[x, y, z, w] /(x y-z w) \tag{4.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

since $x y$ and $z w$ are both $\chi^{(2,1,1)}$. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma^{\vee} \cap \tau^{\perp}=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(1,0,0)+\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}(1,1,0) \tag{4.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

which corresponds to $\tau \subset \sigma$ being an extremal ray. This means

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\left(\sigma^{\vee} \cap \tau^{\perp}\right) \cap M\right] \simeq k[x, z] \tag{4.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $I_{\tau}=(w, y)$. So then explicitly

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{*}: k[x, z] \rightarrow k[x, y, z, w] /(x y-z w) \tag{4.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\iota^{*}: k[x, y, z, w] /(x y-z w) \xrightarrow{/(w, y)} k[x, z] \tag{4.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 10. Globalize: fans

DEFINITION 4.7. A fan (in $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ ) is a non-empty collection $\Sigma$ of sharp rational polyhedral cones $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$ such that
(i) for all $\sigma \in \Sigma$, and for all $\tau \subseteq \sigma$ a face, $\tau \in \Sigma$
(ii) for all $\sigma, \sigma^{\prime} \in \Sigma$ implies $\sigma \cap \sigma^{\prime} \subset \sigma$ (or $\sigma^{\prime}$ ) is a face.

The support of $\Sigma$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Sigma|=\bigcup_{\sigma \in \Sigma} \sigma \tag{4.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

We say $\Sigma$ is complex iff $|\Sigma|=N_{\mathbb{R}}$.
We will see later that completeness is equivalent to properness of the corresponding variety.

Example $4.10\left(\mathbb{P}^{2}\right)$. Consider the three cones in Fig. 1. Write $\sigma_{0}$ for the span of $(1,0)$ and $(0,1), \sigma_{1}$ for the span of $(0,1)$ and $(-1,-1)$ and $\sigma_{2}$ for the span of $(1,0)$ and $(-1,-1)$. Write $\tau_{1}$ for the span of $(0,1), \tau_{2}$ for the span of $(1,0)$, and $\tau_{3}$ for the span of $(-1,-1)$. In this case a fan is given by the $\sigma_{i}$, the $\tau_{i}$, and the origin.


Figure 1. The fan in $\mathbb{A}^{2}$ which will eventually correspond to $\mathbb{P}^{2}$.

Example 4.11. Adopt the same notation as Example 4.10 Now imagine we have the upper right quadrant $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2}$, as well as the span of $(-1,-1)$. Then as a fan this is $\left\{\sigma_{0}, \tau_{1}, \tau_{2}, \tau_{3}, 0\right\}$.

Example 4.12. For $d=1 \Sigma$ is either $\{\bullet\}$, $\{\bullet-\}$, or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\{-\bullet-\quad\} \tag{4.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now construct the associated scheme. Let $\Sigma=\{\sigma\}$ be a fan. This will give rise to $\left\{U_{\sigma} \supset \mathbb{G}_{m}^{d}\right\}$ affine toric varieties. Then for all $\sigma, \sigma \in \Sigma$ (WLOG maximal) we get $\sigma \cap \sigma^{\prime} \subset \sigma$ and $\sigma \cap \sigma^{\prime} \subset \sigma^{\prime}$. This gives rise to open embeddings


Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(\Sigma):=\underset{\sigma \in \Sigma}{\lim } U_{\sigma} \tag{4.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a scheme. We will show this compatibility explicitly for $\mathbb{P}^{2}$.
11. Example: $\mathbb{P}^{2}$

Let $\Sigma$ be as in Example 4.10. Dualizing, we get the cones in Fig. 2.


Figure 2. The dual cones to the fan in Example 4.10.

These cones give us the opens

$$
\begin{align*}
& U_{\sigma_{0}}=\operatorname{Spec} k[\underbrace{\chi^{(1,0)}}_{u_{0}}, \underbrace{\chi^{(0,1)}}_{u_{1}}]  \tag{4.50}\\
& U_{\sigma_{1}}=\operatorname{Spec} k[\underbrace{\chi^{(-1,1)}}_{v_{0}}, \underbrace{\chi^{(-1,0)}}_{v_{1}}]  \tag{4.51}\\
& U_{\sigma_{3}}=\operatorname{Spec} k[\underbrace{\chi^{(0,-1)}}_{w_{0}}, \underbrace{\chi^{(1,-1)}}_{w_{1}}] . \tag{4.52}
\end{align*}
$$

Now we glue these charts together. $\sigma_{0} \cap \sigma_{1}$ is just the positive $y$ axis, $\sigma_{0}^{\vee} \cap \sigma_{1}^{\vee}$ is the upper half plane, which corresponds to

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[u_{0}, u_{1}\right]_{u_{0}}=k\left[v_{0}, v_{1}\right]_{v_{1}} . \tag{4.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

But eh $\mathrm{n} U_{\sigma_{0}, \sigma_{1}} \hookrightarrow U_{\sigma_{0}}$ corresponds to

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[u_{0}, u_{1}\right] \hookrightarrow k\left[u_{0}, u_{1}\right]_{u_{0}} \tag{4.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

and similarly $U_{\sigma_{0}, \sigma_{1}} \hookrightarrow U_{\sigma_{1}}$ corresponds to

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[v_{0}, v_{1}\right] \hookrightarrow k\left[v_{0}, v_{1}\right]_{V_{1}} \tag{4.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

so these agree, and explicitly

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{0}=u_{0}^{-1} u_{1} \quad v_{1}=u_{0}^{-1} \tag{4.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

So we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(\Sigma) \simeq \mathbb{P}^{2}=\operatorname{Proj} k\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}\right] \tag{4.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

where explicitly:

$$
\begin{array}{rr}
u_{0}=x_{1} \cdot x_{0} & u_{1}=x_{2} / x_{0} \\
v_{0}=u_{0}^{-1} u_{1}=\left(x_{0} / x_{1}\right)\left(x_{2} / x_{0}\right)=x_{2} / x_{1} & v_{1}=u_{0}^{-1}=x_{0} / x_{1} \\
w_{0}=u_{1}^{-1}=x_{0} / x_{2} & w_{1}=x_{1} / x_{2}
\end{array}
$$

12. $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{d}$ as a toric variety

Write

$$
v_{i}=e_{i}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
0  \tag{4.61}\\
\ldots \\
1 \\
\ldots \\
0
\end{array}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
$$

for $i \in\{1, \ldots, d\}$ and

$$
v_{0}=-\sum_{i=1}^{d} e_{i}=\left(\begin{array}{l}
-1  \tag{4.62}\\
\ldots \\
-1
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $\Sigma$ is the complete fan with rats (one-dimensional cones) $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} v_{i}$.

Lecture 19; October 31, 2019

## 13. Toric strata

Let $\Sigma$ be a fan, $\tau \in \Sigma$. This gives a closed subset which is the fixed locus of the torus. Explicitly we have $\mathbb{T}_{\tau}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[M_{\tau}\right], N_{\tau}=\mathbb{R} \cdot \tau \subset N$. So we take

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Spec}\left(k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]^{\mathbb{T}_{\tau}}\right)=\operatorname{Spec}\left(k\left[\left(\tau^{\perp} \cap \sigma^{\vee}\right) \cap M\right]\right) \subset \operatorname{Spec}\left(k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]\right) \tag{4.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we globalize. Let $\Sigma$ be a fan in $N, \tau \in \Sigma$. Then we get the quotiwt fan in $N / \mathbb{R} \tau$ given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{\tau}=\{\sigma / \mathbb{R} \tau \subset N / \mathbb{R} \tau \mid \sigma \in \Sigma, \sigma \supseteq \tau\} \tag{4.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives rise to a closed embedding $X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right) \subseteq X(\Sigma)$. Note that if $X(\Sigma)$ is dimension $d$, then $X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right)$ is of dimension $d-\operatorname{dim} \tau$.

EXAMPLE 4.13. If we take the fan of $\mathbb{P}^{3}$, and let $\tau$ be the ray given by the positive $z$-axis. Then the quotient fan gives us $\mathbb{P}^{2}$.

There is a fundamental correspondence between rays and toric divisors, i.e. divisors invariant under the torus action. The affine charts are given by $\sigma \supseteq \tau$ since this gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
k\left[\sigma^{\vee}\right] \rightarrow k[\underbrace{\sigma^{\vee} \cap \tau^{\perp}}_{(\sigma / \mathbb{R} \tau)^{\vee}}] . \tag{4.65}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 3. An infinite fan in $N_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$.

## 14. Quasi-compactness

Example 4.14. Consider the fan in Fig. 3. Note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Sigma|=\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}_{>0} \cup\{(0,0)\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{2} \tag{4.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

is not closed. This gives rise to

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(\Sigma)=\bigcup_{\infty} \mathbb{A}^{2} \tag{4.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is not quasi-compact.
As it turns out, we can blow up infinitely many times to get:

$$
\begin{gather*}
X(\Sigma) \\
\downarrow \mathrm{Bl}_{\infty}  \tag{4.68}\\
\mathbb{A}^{1} \times \mathbb{G}_{m}
\end{gather*} .
$$

Write $\pi$ for the projection to $\mathbb{A}^{1}$. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{-1}(0)=\cup_{\infty} \mathbb{P}^{1} \tag{4.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

and for a generic point $\eta \in \mathbb{A}^{1}$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{-1}(\eta)=\mathbb{G}_{m} / k(t) \tag{4.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we have the following:
Proposition 4.8. $X(\Sigma)$ is quasi-compact iff $\Sigma$ is finite.
Proof. $(\Longleftarrow)$ : This is clear.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ : We know

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bigcup_{\tau \in \Sigma \text { a ray }} X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right) \tag{4.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

can only have finitely many irreducible components. Therefore the number of $\tau \in \Sigma$ such that $\operatorname{dim} \tau=1$ is finite, so $\Sigma$ is finite.

## 15. Morphisms of fans

Definition 4.8. Let $\Sigma$ and $\Sigma^{\prime}$ be fans in $N$ and $N^{\prime}$ respectively. A morphism of fans $\varphi: \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma^{\prime}$ is a linear map $\varphi: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow N_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}$ with $\varphi(N) \subseteq N^{\prime}$ and such that for all $\sigma \in \Sigma$ there exists $\sigma^{\prime} \in \Sigma^{\prime}$ such that $\varphi(\sigma) \subseteq \sigma^{\prime}$.

REMARK 4.6. $\sigma^{\prime}$ is not necessarily unique, but there exists a unique maximal one.
Definition 4.9 (Construction of toris morphism). A morphism of fans $\varphi: \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma^{\prime}$ induces $\Phi: X(\Sigma) \rightarrow X\left(\Sigma^{\prime}\right)$ which is equivariant wrt the action of $\mathbb{G}_{m}(N) \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_{m}\left(N^{\prime}\right)$ as follows. Locally, for $\sigma \in \Sigma, \sigma^{\prime} \subseteq \varphi(\sigma)$, define $\Phi: U_{\sigma} \rightarrow U_{\sigma^{\prime}}$ by

$$
\begin{gather*}
k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right] \stackrel{\varphi^{*}}{ } k\left[\left(\sigma^{\prime}\right)^{\vee} \cap M^{\prime}\right]  \tag{4.72}\\
\chi^{\varphi^{*}(m)} \longleftarrow{\varphi^{*}} \chi^{m}
\end{gather*}
$$

and we get


Remark 4.7. This $\Phi$ is really simple at the level of affine opens. We just write it down in a basis.

REMARK 4.8. The map $\mathbb{G}_{m}(N) \rightarrow \mathbb{G}_{m}\left(N^{\prime}\right)$ maps $e=Z\left(\chi^{m}-1\right) \mapsto e^{\prime}=Z\left(\chi^{m^{\prime}}-1\right)_{m \in M^{\prime}}$.

## 16. Examples

Example 4.15. Let $N_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}, N_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$. Define the map by $\lambda \mapsto(p \lambda, q \lambda)$. Then $\varphi^{*} M^{\prime}=\mathbb{N}^{2} \rightarrow M=\mathbb{N}$ by sending $\left(m_{1}, m_{2}\right) \mapsto p m_{1}+q m_{2} \in \mathbb{N}$. On coordinate rings this is

$$
k[u] \longleftarrow \overleftarrow{\varphi} k[x, y]
$$

$$
u^{p} \longleftarrow x
$$

$$
u^{q} \longleftrightarrow y
$$

Now if $\operatorname{gcd}(p, q)=1$, then $\operatorname{ker}\left(\varphi^{*}\right)=\left(x^{q}-y^{p}\right)$ Then the closure of the image of $\mathbb{T}_{N}$ in $\mathbb{T}_{N^{\prime}}=\mathbb{G}_{m}^{2}$ is $Z\left(x^{p}-y^{q}\right)$ in $\mathbb{A}^{2}$.

Example 4.16. Take the cone generated by $(1,0)$ and $(1,1)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{2}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}^{2} \xrightarrow{\varphi=\mathrm{id}} N_{\mathbb{R}}=N_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}=\mathbb{R}^{2} \tag{4.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

except the cone $\sigma^{\prime}=\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2}$. The dual cone of $\sigma$ is now the span of $(1,-1)$ and $(0,1)$ and of course $\sigma^{\prime \vee}$ is just $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^{2}$. The map from $\sigma^{\prime \vee} \rightarrow \sigma^{\vee}$ is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
& u v \longleftrightarrow x=\chi^{(1,0)}  \tag{4.76}\\
& v \longleftrightarrow y=\chi^{(0,1)}
\end{align*}
$$

This is one of the affine charts of the blowup $\mathrm{Bl}_{0} \mathbb{A}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{2}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{Bl}_{(x, y)} \mathbb{A}^{2}=\operatorname{Proj} k \underbrace{[x, y]}_{\operatorname{deg}=0} \underbrace{[U, V]}_{\operatorname{deg}=1} /(x V-y U) . \tag{4.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we de-homogenize, i.e. we consider the charts $U \neq 0$ and $V \neq 0$. To eliminate $y \mathrm{~m}$ we set $U=1, V / U=v$, and we map

$$
\begin{gather*}
k[x, y] \longrightarrow k[x, v] \\
x \longmapsto x  \tag{4.78}\\
y \longmapsto \\
y \longmapsto
\end{gather*}
$$

Similarly, for the $V \neq 0$ chart we take $V=1, u=U / V$. Then to eliminate $x$ we map

$$
\begin{gather*}
k[x, y] \longrightarrow k[y, u] \\
x \longmapsto y u  \tag{4.79}\\
y \longmapsto \\
y \longmapsto
\end{gather*}
$$

DEFINITION 4.10. A subdivision of fans is a morphism $\tilde{\Sigma} \rightarrow \Sigma$ where $N \xrightarrow{\text { id }} N=N^{\prime}$, i.e. for all $\sigma^{\prime} \in \Sigma^{\prime}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma^{\prime}=\bigcup_{\sigma \subseteq \varphi^{-1}\left(\sigma^{\prime}\right)} \varphi(\sigma) \tag{4.80}
\end{equation*}
$$

The upshot is that a subdivision of fans corresponds to a modification, i.e. a birational, proper morphism $X(\Sigma) \rightarrow X\left(\Sigma^{\prime}\right)$.

EXAMPle 4.17. Consider the cone $\sigma$ spanned by $(0,1)$ and $(k, 1)$ in $N_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$. Then the projection to the $y$-axis maps to $N_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}=\mathbb{R}$. This maps to $\sigma^{\prime}$ given by the span of 1 .

The dual cone $\sigma^{\vee}$ is given by the span of $(-1, k)$ and $(1,0)$. Then we get a map from $\sigma^{\wedge}$ (which is still the span of 1 ) by sending $1 \mapsto(0,1)$. This corresponds to the map

$$
\begin{aligned}
& k[t] \longrightarrow k[x, y, t] /\left(x y-t^{k}\right) \\
& t=\chi^{1} \longmapsto x y
\end{aligned}
$$

where $x=\chi^{(1,0)}, y=\chi^{(-1, k)}$, and $t=\chi^{(0,1)}$. This gives rise to what is called the $A_{k-1}$ surface singularity. This is a fibration of the $A_{k-1}$ surface singularity by a family $\left\{C_{t}\right\}$ of curves with $C_{t} \simeq \mathbb{G}_{m}$ smooth for $t \neq 0, X_{0}=\mathbb{A}^{1} \cup \mathbb{A}^{1}$ a nodal curve .

Example 4.18 (Change of lattice). Consider a map $N_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}^{2} \rightarrow N_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$ defined by a matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
a & 0  \tag{4.82}\\
0 & b
\end{array}\right)
$$

This corresponds to a map of rings:

$$
\begin{gather*}
k[x, y] \longleftarrow k[x, y] \\
x^{a} \longleftarrow x  \tag{4.83}\\
y^{a} \longleftarrow \\
y
\end{gather*}
$$

This corresponds to a covering branched of order $b$ on the $x$-axis and of order $a$ on the $y$-axis.

The upshot is that a change of lattice gives us a branched cover of $X\left(\Sigma^{\prime}\right)$ branched along toric strata. We can read the branch index off from the cokernel of the map $N \rightarrow N^{\prime}$

Example 4.19. Let $\tau \in \Sigma$. Take

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma(\tau)=\left\{\left(\tau, N_{\tau}=\mathbb{R} \tau\right)\right\} \tag{4.84}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we get a map

$$
\begin{gather*}
\Sigma(\tau) \longrightarrow \Sigma  \tag{4.85}\\
N_{\tau} \longleftrightarrow N
\end{gather*}
$$

This will give an affine toric subvariety. Explicitly,

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(\Sigma(\tau))=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\left(\tau \subset N_{\tau}\right)^{\vee} \cap M_{\tau}\right] \rightarrow X(\Sigma) \tag{4.86}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 4.20. As a subexample, take $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ with $\tau$ a ray. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{T}_{N_{\tau}}=\left\{g \in T T_{N}\left|\forall p \in X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right)\right| g \cdot p=p\right\}=\operatorname{Fix}_{X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right)} \subseteq T_{N} \tag{4.87}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we ask for the closure of the distinguished point. This is affine, contains $[1,0,1],[1,1,1]$, but not $[0,1,0]$.

In fact $\mathbb{T}_{N_{\tau}} \subset X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right)$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(\Sigma(\tau)) \times \mathbb{T}_{N_{\tau}} \subset X\left(\Sigma_{\tau}\right) \tag{4.88}
\end{equation*}
$$

So it is locally a product of a torus and this affine variety.

## 17. Properties of toric morphisms

Adopt the notation $X(\Sigma)=T V(\Sigma, N)$. For $\varphi: \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma^{\prime}$ write $\Phi: X(\Sigma) \otimes X\left(\Sigma^{\prime}\right)$.
Proposition 4.9. (a) $\Phi$ is a closed embedding iff

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma=\left\{\varphi^{-1}\left(\sigma^{\prime}\right) \mid \sigma^{\prime} \in \Sigma^{\prime}\right\} \tag{4.89}
\end{equation*}
$$

(which in particular implies $N_{\mathbb{R}} \otimes N_{\mathbb{R}}^{\prime}$ is injective) and for all $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2} \in \varphi^{-1}\left(\sigma^{\prime}\right)$ the maps

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{2}^{\vee} \cap M^{\prime} \rightarrow \sigma^{\vee} \cap M \tag{4.90}
\end{equation*}
$$

are surjective.
(b) $\Phi$ is dominant ${ }^{4.4}$ iff $N^{\prime} / \varphi(N)$ is a torsion group (equivalently $\left.\left[N^{\prime}, \varphi(N)\right]<\infty\right)$.
(c) $\Phi$ is always separated.
(d) $\Phi$ is proper iff $\varphi^{-1}\left(\left|\Sigma^{\prime}\right|\right)=|\Sigma|$.

Note that removing maximal cones certainly will not yield a proper morphism. The first two are quite easy, the last two follow from valuative criteria.

## 18. The category of toric varieties

At the moment our definition of a toric variety is a variety which comes from this fan construction. Similarly, our definition for morphisms of the is a morphism induced by a morphism of fans. This is a lazy man's definition. We now offer a more intrinsic definition of these.

Definition 4.11. A toric variety (over a ground field $k$ ) is a separated scheme of finite type over $k$ which is connected and normal (in particular reduced and irreducible), together with the action of an algebraic torus $\mathbb{T}_{N}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[N^{*}\right]$ and a $\mathbb{T}_{N}$ equivariant open embedding $\mathbb{T}_{N} \hookrightarrow X$.

Let $\mathbb{T}_{N} \subset X$ and $T_{N^{\prime}} \subset Y$ be toric varieties. Morphisms of toric varieties will be given by:


Note the bottom morphism is equivalent to a morphism $N \rightarrow N^{\prime}$.
Theorem 4.10. The category of toric varieties is equivalent to the category of fans.

## 19. Polytopes and polyhedra

Definition 4.12. A (convex) polyhedron $\Xi \subseteq V$ is a finite intersection of half-spaces.
Definition 4.13. A polytope is the convex hull of finitely many points.
Note this implies that a polytope is bounded.
Let $V=M_{\mathbb{R}}, M=\mathbb{Z}^{n}$. A rational polytope (resp. integral) if it is the convex hull of $v_{i} \in M_{\mathbb{Q}}$ (resp. $\quad v_{i} \in M$ ) A polyhedron is rational if all half-spaces are $u \geq 0$ for $u \in M^{*} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q}=N_{\mathbb{Q}}$.

TheOrem 4.11. A polytope is the same as a bounded polyhedron.

[^15]

Figure 4. $\Xi$ from Example 4.21.

Polyhedron and polytopes have faces as before. Codimension 1 faces are facets. They also have vertices as before. Note that they may not exist for unbounded polyhedra.

Let $\Xi \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$ be a polyhedron. Then we can form the cone:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\Xi)=\mathrm{Cl}\left(\left\{(m, h) \in M_{\mathbb{R}} \times \mathbb{R} \mid m \in h \cdot \Xi\right\}\right) \tag{4.92}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that if we don't take the closure, then the cone of an unbounded polyhedron would not be closed.

The recession cone (or asymptotic cone) of $\Xi$ is the intersection $C(\Xi) \cap M_{\mathbb{R}} \times\{0\} \subseteq M_{\mathbb{R}}$.
Example 4.21. Take $M_{\mathbb{R}}=\mathbb{R}^{2}$, and consider $\Xi$ as in Fig. 4. Now we can form the one over this. The cone at height 0 is just a quadrant.

Definition 4.14 (Dual polytopes/polyhedra). Let $\Xi \subseteq M_{\mathbb{R}}, 0 \in \operatorname{int}(\Xi) \backslash \partial \Xi$. Define the dual (polar) polyhedron

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Xi^{\circ}:=\left\{v \in N_{\mathbb{R}} \mid \forall u \in \Xi,\langle u, v\rangle \leq 1\right\} . \tag{4.93}
\end{equation*}
$$

REMARK 4.9. We will eventually construct Calabi-Yau varieties from these, and this dualizing operation will be mirror symmetry.

REmark 4.10. The idea is that we want $C(\Xi)^{\vee}=C\left(\Xi^{\circ}\right)$.
REmark 4.11. There is a choice of convention here where we might instead ask for $\langle u, v\rangle \geq-1$. Then this just gives negative of our dual polyhedron.

Note that proper faces $\tau \subseteq C(\Xi)\left(\tau \nsubseteq M_{\mathbb{R}} \times\{0\}\right)$ are in one-to-one correspondence with (proper) faces of $\Xi$.

Example 4.22. Consider the polytope in Fig. 5. This has dual polytope in Fig. 5.
Example 4.23. Consider the cube

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Xi=\operatorname{conv}\{( \pm 1, \pm 1, \pm 1)\} \tag{4.94}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 5. Polyhedron in $\mathbb{R}^{2}$ and its dual polyhedron.

The dual is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Xi^{\circ}=\operatorname{conv}\left\{ \pm e_{1}, \pm e_{2}, \pm e_{3}\right\} \tag{4.95}
\end{equation*}
$$

and octahedron.

## 20. Toric varieties from polyhedra

Consider a convex, rational polyhedron $\Xi \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$. For $\Xi^{\prime} \subset \Xi$ a face, we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\sigma_{\Xi^{\prime}} & =\left\{v \in N_{\mathbb{R}} \mid\left\langle u-u^{\prime}, v\right\rangle \geq 0, \forall u \in \Xi, u^{\prime} i n \Xi^{\prime}\right\}  \tag{4.96}\\
& =\left(\mathrm{Cl}\left(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}\left\{u-u^{\prime} \in M_{\mathbb{R}} \mid u \in \Xi, u^{\prime} \in \Xi^{\prime}\right\}\right)\right)^{\vee} \tag{4.97}
\end{align*}
$$

Proposition 4.12.
(a)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{\Xi}:=\left\{-\sigma_{\Xi^{\prime}} \mid \Xi^{\prime} \subset \Xi a f a c e\right\} \tag{4.98}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 6. $\Sigma_{\Xi}$ from Example 4.24 .
is a fan in $N_{\mathbb{R}}=M_{\mathbb{R}}^{*}$. We call this the normal fan of $\Xi$. Note $\Sigma_{\Xi}$ is complete iff $\Xi$ is bounded.
(b) $0 \in \Xi$ implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{\Xi}=\{0\} \cup\left\{\operatorname{Cl}\left(\left\{\left(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} w\right) \mid w \subseteq \Xi^{\circ} \text { a face }\right\}\right)\right\} \tag{4.99}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 4.24. Consider the polytope


We have three corresponding cones $\tau_{i}$ for each $v_{i}$. These give us exactly the three cones in Fig. 1. Then $\Sigma_{\Xi}$ is as in Fig. 6.

Remark 4.12. The normal fan is insensitive to rescaling of $\Xi$ and to (small) parallel transport of faces.

Definition 4.15. The toric variety associated to $\Xi$ is $X\left(\Sigma_{\Xi}\right)$.
Example 4.25. $\mathbb{P}^{d}=X\left(\Sigma_{\Xi}\right)$ for

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Xi=\operatorname{conv}\left\{0, e_{1}, \ldots, e_{d}\right\} \tag{4.101}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $d=2$ this was the example Example 4.24 up to scaling. I.e. we take the convex hull of $(0,1)$ and $(1,0)$ and we get $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ as in Example 4.10. For $d=3$ this corresponds to the polyhedron which is a tetrahedron.


Figure 7. A fan is formed by taking the cone over this picture. Note this has 7 maximal cones.

Example 4.26. Recall the Hirzebruch surfaces $X=\mathbb{P}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{1}} \oplus \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^{1}}(a)\right)$ for $a \geq 0$. This is given by $X\left(\Sigma_{\Xi}\right)$ where $\Xi$ is


Proposition 4.13. $\operatorname{Proj}(C(\Xi) \cap(M \oplus \mathbb{Z}))=X\left(\Sigma_{\Xi}\right)$.
The proof of this is essentially that if you understand the construction of this Proj, this is a tautology. I.e. we dehomogenize at $\chi^{(v, 1)}$ to get an open set $\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$. Then the result follows.

Remark 4.13. We have a canonical bijection
$\{\Xi \subset M \mid \Xi \mathbb{Q}-$ polyhedron $\} \xrightarrow{\simeq}\left\{(\Sigma, \varphi:|\Sigma| \rightarrow \mathbb{R}) \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{c}\Sigma \text { fan in } N_{\mathbb{R}} \\ \varphi \text { strictly convex, piecewise linear }\end{array}\right.\right\}$.
In particular the vertices $v_{i}$ on the LHS correspond to maximal $\sigma \in \Sigma$, and $\left.\varphi\right|_{\sigma}=v_{i}: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow$ $\mathbb{R}$. The other direction sends functions $\varphi$ to the Newton polyhedron of $(\Sigma, \varphi)$, written $\Xi(\Sigma, \varphi)$. Note that $\Xi \mapsto \Xi+m$ corresponds to $(\Sigma, \varphi) \mapsto(\Sigma, \varphi+m)$.

Remark 4.14. Note every fan arises in this way. In dimension 2 every fan does arise in this way, but not in dimension 3 and higher.

Counterexample 2. Take the cone over Fig. 7. This does not support a strongly convex piecewise linear function. This is equivalent to the triangulation not being "regular".

Example 4.27. Recall Example 4.21. The cone is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\Xi)=\langle(1,0,0),(0,1,0),(1,0,1),(0,1,1)\rangle . \tag{4.104}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lecture 21;
November 7, 2019

Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
k[C(\Xi) \cap(M \oplus \mathbb{Z})] \simeq k[x, y][U, V] /(x V-y U) \tag{4.105}
\end{equation*}
$$

and taking Proj we get the blowup

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Proj}(k[C(\Xi) \cap M \oplus \mathbb{Z}])=\mathrm{Bl}_{0} \mathbb{A}^{2} \tag{4.106}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the point of view of fans, we take the upper right quadrant (which gives us $\mathbb{A}^{2}$ ) then we subdivide this fan to get a cone spanned by $(1,0)$ and $(1,1)$ and a cone spanned by $(1,1)$ and $(0,1)$. The point is that chopping off edges of a polyhedron corresponds to (projective ${ }^{4.5}$ ) subdivision of the corresponding fan $\Sigma_{\Xi}$.

## 21. Weil divisors on toric varieties

Let $X$ be a $d$-dimensional toric variety with fan $\Sigma$ and rays $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} v_{1}, \ldots, \mathbb{R}_{\geq} v_{r}$, where the $v_{i}$ are primitive vectors. Each $v_{i}$ gives a $(d-1)$-dimensional toric stratum, which is the Weil divisor $D_{i}$. These are called toric prime divisors. Write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Div}^{T} X \subset \operatorname{Div} X \tag{4.107}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the subgroup of $\mathbb{T}$-invariant Weil divisors. Note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Div}^{T} X=\sum \mathbb{Z} \cdot\left[D_{i}\right] \tag{4.108}
\end{equation*}
$$

The divisor class group is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{Cl} X=A_{d-1}(X)=\mid X / \sim_{\mathrm{rat}^{\prime} \mathrm{l}} \tag{4.109}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proposition 4.14. The sequence

$$
\begin{align*}
0 \longrightarrow & M \longrightarrow \operatorname{Div}^{T} X \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl} X \longrightarrow 0  \tag{4.110}\\
m & \longmapsto\left(\chi^{m}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

is exact, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi^{m}=\sum_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{ord}_{D_{i}} \chi^{m} D_{i} \tag{4.111}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. $k[M]$ is factorial (UFD) which means

$$
\begin{equation*}
0=\mathrm{ClSpec} k[M]=\mathrm{Cl} \mathbb{T}=\mathrm{Cl} X \backslash D \tag{4.112}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies $A_{d-1}(D)=\operatorname{Div}^{T}(X) \rightarrow \mathrm{Cl} X$.
Let $\sum n_{i} D_{i} \in \operatorname{ker} \varphi$. Then there exists some $f \in k(X)^{\times}$such that $(f)=\sum n_{i} D_{i}$. This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.f\right|_{X \backslash D} \in k[M]^{\times}=k^{\times} \times M \tag{4.113}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. $f=\lambda \chi^{m}$ for $\lambda \in k^{\times}$and $m \in M$. WLOG $\lambda=1$.

[^16]Note that $\operatorname{ord}_{D^{i}} \chi^{m}=\left\langle v_{i}, m\right\rangle$. To see this, first adapt to a basis for $N$ given by $e_{1}=v_{1}$, and the other $e_{i}$ arbitrary. Write $e_{i}^{*}$ for the dual basis. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{T}_{D_{i}}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\chi^{ \pm e_{2}^{*}}, \ldots, \chi^{ \pm e_{d}^{*}}\right] \tag{4.114}
\end{equation*}
$$

This sits inside the open set

$$
\begin{equation*}
X \supseteq U_{i}=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\chi^{e_{1}^{*}}, \chi^{ \pm e_{2}^{*}}, \ldots, \chi^{ \pm e_{d}^{*}}\right] \tag{4.115}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\chi^{m}=\chi^{m_{1}} \ldots \chi^{m_{d}}$ where $m=\sum m_{i} e_{i}$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{1}=\sum \operatorname{ord}_{D_{i}} \chi^{m}=\left\langle m, v_{i}\right\rangle \tag{4.116}
\end{equation*}
$$

22. $\mathrm{Cl}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)$

Corollary 4.15. $\mathrm{Cl}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)=A_{n-1}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right)=\mathbb{Z} \cdot H$ for $H$ a hyperplane. The degree map $\mathrm{Cl}\left(\mathbb{P}^{n}\right) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ is given by intersection with a line.

Proof. We have a SES

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}^{n} \xrightarrow{m \mapsto\left(v_{i}, m\right.} \mathbb{Z}^{n+1} \xrightarrow{\left(a_{i}\right) \mapsto \sum a_{i}} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0 \tag{4.117}
\end{equation*}
$$

and then the rays are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{\mathbb{P}^{n}}^{[1]}=\left\{\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} e_{1}, \ldots, \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} e_{n}, \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}\left(-e_{1}, \ldots,-e_{n}\right)\right\} \tag{4.118}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 23. Cartier divisors on toric varieties

Recall the Cartier divisors are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{CaDiv} X=\Gamma\left(X, \mathcal{K}^{\times} / \mathcal{O}^{\times}\right) \tag{4.119}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\mathcal{K}$ the sheaf of total quotient rings. For $X$ integral, $\mathcal{K}$ is is a locally constant sheaf with stalks $\mathcal{K}(X)$. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\left(U_{i}, f_{i}\right) \mid f_{i} \in \mathcal{K}(X)^{\times}, \forall i, j f_{i} / f_{j} \in \mathcal{O}^{\times}\left(U_{i} \cap U_{j}\right)\right\} \tag{4.120}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\operatorname{CaDiv} X \hookrightarrow \operatorname{Div} X$.
Lemma 4.16. Let $X$ be an affine toric variety given by $X=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$. Then $D \in D^{T}(X)$ is Cartier iff there exists $m \in M$ such that $D=\left(\chi^{m}\right)$.

Proposition 4.17. Let $\Sigma$ be a fan in $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ with toric variety $X_{\Sigma}$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{CaDiv}\left(X_{\Sigma}\right)=\operatorname{PL}(\Sigma):=\{\varphi:|\Sigma| \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \mid \varphi \text { piecewise linear wrt } \Sigma\} \tag{4.121}
\end{equation*}
$$

The map sends $\sum \varphi\left(v_{i} \cdot D_{i} \leftrightarrow \varphi\right)$ where the $v_{i}$ are the primitive vectors of $\sigma$, in particular the rays of $\Sigma$ are given by $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} v_{i}$.

## 24. $\operatorname{Pic}\left(X_{\Sigma}\right)$

Proposition 4.18. The Picard group $\operatorname{Pic}\left(X_{\Sigma}\right)=\operatorname{PL}(\Sigma) / M=\operatorname{CaCl} X=\operatorname{CaDiv}(X) / \sim_{\text {ret }}$ l where $\mathrm{CaCl} X$ is the Cartier divisor class group.
Corollary 4.19. $\operatorname{Pic}\left(X_{\Sigma}\right)$ is discrete and always torsion free, i.e. for $\varphi \in \operatorname{PL}(\Sigma), \varphi \in M_{\mathbb{R}}$ iff $\varphi \in M$.

## 25. Ample toric divisors

Proposition 4.20. Let $\varphi \in \operatorname{PL}(\Sigma)$ with $|\Sigma|$ convex and $D=\sum \varphi\left(v_{i}\right) D_{i}$ the corresponding Cartier divisor. Then $\mathcal{O}_{X}(D)$ is ample iff $\varphi$ is strictly convex.

Proof. $(\Longleftarrow)$ : Let $\Xi$ denote the Newton polytope. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
X=X\left(\Sigma_{\Xi}\right)=\operatorname{Proj}(k[C(\Xi) \cap(M \oplus \mathbb{Z})]) \tag{4.122}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\mathcal{O}_{X}(D)=\mathcal{O}_{X}(1)$, which implies very ample.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ : Let $\rho \in \Sigma^{[d-1]}$ be a codimension 1 cone such that $\rho \nsubseteq \partial|\Sigma|$. The "kink of $\varphi$ along $\rho "$ is $\mathcal{K}_{\rho}(\varphi) \in \mathbb{Z}$. Write $\rho=\sigma_{1} \cap \sigma_{2}$ for $\sigma_{i}$ maximal. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\varphi\right|_{\sigma_{1}}=\left.m_{1} \in M \quad \varphi\right|_{\sigma_{2}}=m_{2} \in M \tag{4.123}
\end{equation*}
$$

Write $\check{d}_{S} \in M$ for the unique primitive generator of $\rho^{\perp} \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ with $\left.\check{d}_{\rho}\right|_{\sigma_{2}} \geq 0$. Then $m_{2}-m_{1}=$ $\mathcal{K}_{\rho}(\varphi) \cdot \check{d}_{\rho} \in \rho^{\perp}$.

FACT 7. $\varphi$ is strictly convex iff for all $\rho, \mathcal{K}_{\rho}(\varphi)>0$.
FACT 8. $\mathcal{K}_{\rho}(\varphi)=\left.\operatorname{deg} \mathcal{O}_{X}(D)\right|_{X\left(\Sigma_{\rho}\right) \subset X}$.
For $D$ ample, this degree is positive.

## CHAPTER 5

## Toric degenerations and mirror symmetry

## 1. The Batyrev mirror construction

### 1.1. Reflexive polytopes.

Definition 5.1. Let $0 \in \Xi \subset M_{\mathbb{R}}$ be a lattice polytope. This is called reflexive iff
(i) $\operatorname{int}(\Xi) \cap M=\{0\}$
(ii) each facet of $\Xi$ has $\mathbb{Z}$-affine distance 1 from the origin
or equivalently
(i) $\operatorname{int}(\Xi) \cap M=\{0\}$
(ii) $\operatorname{int}\left(\Xi^{\circ}\right) \cap M=\{0\}$
or equivalently $\Xi$ and $\Xi^{\circ}$ are lattice polytopes.
Note that $\Xi$ is reflexive iff $\Xi^{\circ}$ is reflexive.
Example 5.1. Let


Then the dual is


Note these both have a unique interior integral point.
Example 5.2. A square of width 2 centered around the origin has dual with given by rotating $45^{\circ}$.

There are only 16 reflexive polytopes in 2-dimensions as in Fig. 1. There are 4,319 in 3 -dimensions, and in dimension 4 we have $473,800,776$. This is where the statement that there are many different string theories comes from.

Counterexample 3. If we take the convex hull of $(-1,-1),(-1,0),(1,0),(0,2)$ this is not reflexive.


Figure 1. The 16 reflexive polytopes in 2-dimensions. Figure from [1].

### 1.2. Fano toric varieties.

Definition 5.2. A variety $X$ is called Fano iff $X$ has Gorenstein singularities (this is equivalent to $K_{X}$ being Cartier, or equivalently that $X$ has a dualizing line bundle (note this means $X$ is projective)) and $K_{X}$ is ample.

Proposition 5.1. A complete toric variety $X$ is Fano iff $X \simeq X\left(\Sigma_{\Xi}\right)$ with $\Xi$ reflexive.
Proof. Let $\Sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$. Then $U=\operatorname{Spec} k\left[\sigma^{\vee} \cap M\right]$ has canonical divisor $K_{U}=-\sum D_{i}$ for $S_{i} \subset U$ toric prime divisors. Note the holomorphic volume form $z_{1}^{-1} d z_{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge z_{d}^{-1} d z_{d}$ has simple poles along any toric divisor.

Now we see that $K_{U}$ is Cartier iff there exists there exists $m_{\sigma} \in M$ such that for all $i$ we have $\left\langle m_{\sigma}, V_{i}\right\rangle=1$. Now we translate this condition to the world of polytopes. In particular, $\Xi$ is the convex hull of the $m_{\sigma} \mathrm{s}$, and then this condition above is exactly saying that the integral distance is 1 .
1.3. CY hypersurfaces in the smooth case. Let $X$ be a smooth Fano variety woth $\Gamma\left(X,-K_{x}\right) \neq 0$. Then by Bertini, we have that $Z(s) \subset X$ is smooth. The adjunction formula tells us that

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{Z(s)}=\left.\left(-K_{X}+K_{X}\right)\right|_{Z(s)}=0 \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The problem is that only very few are smooth toric Fano varieties.
1.4. (Partial) Desingularization. Write $\Sigma_{\Xi}$ for the fan over the faces of $\Xi^{\circ}$.

DEfinition 5.3. A maximal, projective, crepant, partial (MPCP) subdivision $\Sigma$ of $\Sigma_{\Xi}$ is

- $\Sigma$ is a subdivision of $\Sigma$
- $\Sigma$ is simplicial and projective.
- The set $\Sigma(1)$ of primitive generators of rays of $\Sigma$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma(1)=\Xi^{\circ} \cap(N \backslash\{0\})=\partial \Xi \cap N \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

I.e. we need to triangulate each face of $\Xi^{\circ}$ regularly.

REmark 5.1. For $d \geq 3 \Sigma$ may not be unique since there are all sorts of subdivisions.
Proposition 5.2. For $\Sigma M P C P$ then
(i) $X_{\Sigma}$ is a Gorenstein orbifold ${ }^{5.1}$
(ii) $\Xi$ is the polytope associated to $-K_{X}$
(iii) $f: K_{X_{\Sigma}} \rightarrow K_{X(\Xi)}$ is crepant. This means that the pullback of the canonical bundle is a canonical bundle, i.e. $K_{X_{\Sigma}}=f^{*} K_{X(\Xi)}$.
(iv) $-K_{X_{\Sigma}}$ is semi-ample, i.e. it is generated by global sections a big ${ }^{5.2}$
1.5. Batyrev hypersurface mirrors. Let $\Xi, \Xi^{\circ}$ be a reflexive pair. Let $\Sigma$ and $\Sigma \check{\Sigma}$ be MPCP subdivisions of $\Sigma_{\Xi}$ and $\Sigma_{\Xi}$. Then we get mirror dual families. For a general section $s \in \Gamma\left(X_{\Sigma},-K_{X_{\Sigma}}\right)$ we can form

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z(s) \subset X_{\Sigma} \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and similarly $\check{s} \in \Gamma\left(X_{\check{\Sigma}},-K_{X_{\check{\Sigma}}}\right)$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z(\check{s}) \subset X_{\check{\Sigma}} \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

These are the mirror pairs. Note that $\Gamma\left(X,-K_{X}\right)=\operatorname{Map}\left(\Xi^{\circ} \cap M, k\right)$.

Lecture 23;
November 19, 2019

### 1.6. Mirror theorems.

Theorem 5.3. $h^{1,1}(X)=h^{n-1,1}(\check{X})$
Proof. See [6] Theorem 4.15, or [2].
ThEOREM 5.4 (Batyrev). There exist "stringy" refinements of $h^{p, q}$ for orbifold singularities, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{s t}^{p, q}(X)=h_{s t}^{n-p, q}(\check{X}) \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This has something to do with motivic integration. Then we have that Gromov-Witten theory is the same as variations of Hodge structures.

Theorem 5.5. $G W_{g=0}(X)=\operatorname{VHS}(\check{X})$.
Proof. See $[\mathbf{5}, \mathbf{1 2}, 22]$.
Then there are some generalizations to toric complete intersections by Batyrev-Borisov.
The goal is then to make a more intrinsic construction which applies to a more general situation as in the ongoing project $[\mathbf{1 5}, \mathbf{1 7}]$.

Example 5.3. Consider the polytope in Fig. 2. Now label the vertices as on the right of Fig. 2. This gives us a degeneration in $\mathbb{P}^{2} \times \mathbb{A}_{t}^{1}$ given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
t^{0} x y z+t^{2}\left(x^{2} y+x y^{2}+y^{2} z+y z^{2}+x^{2} z+x z^{2}\right)+t^{3}\left(x^{3}+y^{3}+z^{3}\right)=0 \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $t \neq 0$ this is a CY hypersurface (i.e. an elliptic curve) and for $t=0 x y z=0$ is the union of three hyperplanes $\mathbb{P}^{1}$.

[^17]

Figure 2. A polytope with its unique MPCP subdivision. A PL function is given by the labeled values.


Figure 3. Construction of the family $\mathcal{X}$ starting from $\Omega$.

Consider $\mathcal{X} \rightarrow S$ where (in deformation theory) $S$ is Spec of some DVR. But really we could take it to be a local ring, or a complete local ring. Then we want the fiber over 0 , $X_{0}$, to be a union of toric varieties, i.e. a coproduct of toric varieties over a codimension 1 strata.

## 2. Mumford type toric degenerations

2.1. Construction. Let $\Omega \subseteq N_{\mathbb{R}}$ be convex and closed. Let $\mathcal{P}=\{\sigma\}$ be rational such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Omega=\bigcup_{\sigma \in \mathcal{P}} \sigma \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

locally finite. This gives us a fan

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{\mathcal{P}}=\left\{C(\sigma) \subset N_{\mathbb{R}} \oplus \mathbb{R}\right\} \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The idea is to put this at height one, and form a cone as in Fig. 3.
Proposition 5.6. (a) $\pi^{-1}\left(\mathbb{A}^{2} \backslash\{0\}\right)=\left(\mathbb{A}^{2} \backslash\{0\}\right) \times X\left(\Sigma_{\mathcal{P}} \cap\left(N_{\mathbb{R}} \times\{0\}\right)\right)$ which is of dimension $d+1$.
(b)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{-1}(0)=\bigcup_{v \in \mathcal{P} \text { vertex }} \underbrace{X\left(\Sigma_{v}\right)}_{D_{v}} \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

(c)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{mult}_{D_{v}}\left(\pi^{-1}(0)\right)=\min \{d \in \mathbb{N} \backslash\{0\} \mid d \cdot v \in N\} \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. (a) $\pi^{-1}\left(\mathbb{A}^{1} \backslash 0\right)$ corresponds to the fan $\left\{C(\sigma) \cap\left(N_{\mathbb{R}} \times\{0\}\right)\right\}$ in $N \oplus \mathbb{Z}$. (b) $\pi^{-1}(0)$ is the union of toric prime divisors $D_{w}$ with $w \in \Sigma$, $\operatorname{dim} w=1$, and $w \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{1}$.
(c) We know $v$ is of the form $1 / d(n, d)$ for $n \in N$ and $d$ minimal. Locally complete implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{ord}_{D_{w}} \pi^{*}(t)=d \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the example in Fig. $3, t \neq 0$ gives us $\pi^{-1}(t)=\mathbb{P}^{2}$, and $t=0$ gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
\pi^{-1}(0)=\bigcup_{3} X(-1,0)-\underbrace{}_{(1,-1)}) \tag{5.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathbb{P}^{2} \\
\downarrow /(\mathbb{Z} / 3)  \tag{5.15}\\
\pi^{-1}(0) \simeq \mathbb{P}(1,1,3)
\end{gather*}
$$

2.2. Polytope picture. For mirror symmetry we need a polarized version. For $\Xi \subset$ $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ a $\mathbb{Q}$-polyhedron write $\check{\mathcal{P}}$ for a $\mathbb{Q}$-polyhedron decomposition of $\Xi$. For a regular subdivision there exists an integral piecewise affine function $\check{\varphi}: \Xi \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ which is strictly convex. This gives a graph $\Gamma_{\check{\varphi}} \subset M_{\mathbb{R}} \times \mathbb{R}$. The upper convex hull is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbb{B}_{\check{\varphi}}:=\Gamma_{\check{\varphi}}+\left(0 \oplus \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}\right)=\{(m, h) \in \Xi \times \mathbb{R} \mid h \geq \check{\varphi}(m)\} \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives us the polarized Mumford degeneration

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(X\left(\Sigma_{B \breve{\varphi}}\right)\right) \tag{5.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
X\left(\Sigma_{B_{\check{\varphi}}}\right)=\operatorname{Proj} k\left[C\left(\mathbb{B}_{\varphi}\right) \cap(M \oplus \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z})\right] \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

2.3. Mirror symmetry for Mumford degenerations. The idea is that we have a 1-to-1 correspondence:

$$
\begin{align*}
& (\mathcal{B}=|\mathcal{P}|, \mathcal{P}, \varphi) \longleftrightarrow(\check{\mathcal{B}}=|\check{\mathcal{P}}|, \check{\mathcal{P}}, \check{\varphi}) \\
& \text { PA-function } \longleftrightarrow \check{\sigma} \text { Newton polyhedron of }\left.\varphi\right|_{\Sigma_{\sigma}}, \sigma \in \mathcal{P}  \tag{5.19}\\
& \quad\left(\Sigma_{\mathcal{P}}, \psi\right) \longleftrightarrow(\Xi, \check{\psi})
\end{align*}
$$

where $\psi$ is a PL function.
Example 5.4. A toric degeneration of $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ given by $\mathcal{P}$ from Fig. $4 \check{\mathcal{P}}$ is also shown in Fig. 4.


Figure 4. An example of $\mathcal{P}$ and $\check{\mathcal{P}}$.
2.4. Toric degenerations. So we have

where we want $\mathcal{X}_{0}$ to be a union of projective toric varieties and $\left.\mathcal{L}\right|_{\mathbb{P}(\sigma)}=\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}(\sigma)}(1)$. So the data is $(\mathcal{B}=\cup \sigma, \mathcal{P}=\{\sigma\}, \varphi)$ where $\mathcal{B}$ is a manifold with boundary, $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{R}} \mathcal{B}=\operatorname{dim} X=d$, and $\varphi$ is a polarizing function. So this is the fan picture. $\varphi$ corresponds to toric models of $\pi$ in codimension 1.

Then there is an equivalent polyhedron construction. The discrete Legendre transform is mirror duality for $(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P}, \varphi)$ which yields $(\check{\mathcal{B}}, \check{\mathcal{P}}, \check{\varphi})$.

## 3. Towards GS-type toric degenerations

### 3.1. The Dwork pencil and $A_{1}$-singularities. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}=\left(t \cdot \sum_{i=0}^{3} z_{i}^{4}+\prod_{i=0}^{3} z_{i}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}^{3} \times \mathbb{A}^{1} \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

which projects $\pi: \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^{1}$. This is a 3-dimensional analogue of the quintic we saw at the beginning of the course. This is a degeneration of $K 3$. Then we get $\mathcal{X}_{0}=\pi^{-1}(0)$ which is a union of $4 \mathbb{P}^{2}$ s given by $\mathbb{P}(\sigma)$ for $\sigma$ maximal. The total space of $\mathcal{X}$ has $6 \cdot 4=24$ three-dimensional $A_{1}$ singularities on the singular locus of $X_{0}$ which is 6 copies of $\mathbb{P}^{1}$.

Let's consider the local equation by dehomogenizing at $z_{0}, z_{1} \neq 0$. This gives us

$$
\begin{equation*}
z_{1} z_{2}=\frac{1+z_{1}^{4}+z_{2}^{4}+z_{3}^{4}}{z_{1}} \tag{5.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

So up to an analytic change of coordinates, this is isomorphic to $u v=w t$, which is an $A_{1}$ singularity.

Modulo $t^{k+1}$ we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi \bmod t^{k+1}=\cup_{i=0}^{3} X_{\sigma_{i}}^{k} \tag{5.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $X_{\sigma_{i}}^{0}=\mathbb{P}\left(\sigma_{0}\right)$. This is essentially the $k$ th order neighborhood of $X_{\sigma_{i}} \subset \mathcal{X}$. The observation is that these individual terms do not depend on $X_{\sigma_{i}}^{k}$ are completely determined
by $(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P} . \varphi)$. Only the identification in higher codimension is nontoric (the gluing is not toric).
3.2. Key example: one $A_{1}$ singularity. Consider two cells $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}$ which are both half planes intersecting in a real line $\rho$. Write $w$ for the coordinate on the intersection, $u$ for $\sigma_{1}$ and $v$ for $\sigma_{2}$. Then we want an $A_{1}$ singularity at a point $w=-1$ in the intersection. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
u v=\underbrace{(1+w)}_{=f_{\rho}} \cdot t \bmod t^{k+1} \tag{5.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now the rings to glue are

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{\sigma_{1}}=[u, v, w, t] /\left(u v-t, t^{k+1}, v^{k+1}\right)  \tag{5.25}\\
& R_{\sigma_{1}}=[u, v, w, t] /\left(u v-t, t^{k+1}, u^{k+1}\right) \tag{5.26}
\end{align*}
$$

so $X_{\rho}^{k}=\operatorname{Spec} R_{\rho, \sigma_{i}}$. Now we get a diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
R_{\sigma_{1}} \rightarrow R_{\rho, \sigma_{1}}=\left(R_{\sigma_{1}} /\left(u^{k+1}\right)\right) & u & v & f_{\rho}^{-1} \cdot u & f_{\rho} v  \tag{5.27}\\
& \downarrow & \downarrow & \uparrow & \uparrow \\
R_{\sigma_{2}} \rightarrow R_{\rho, \sigma_{2}}=\left(R_{\sigma_{2}} /\left(v^{k+1}\right)\right) & f_{\rho} \cdot u & f_{\rho}^{-1} v & u & v
\end{array}
$$

so we can form the fiber product to get

$$
\begin{align*}
R_{\sigma_{1}} \times R_{r h o, \sigma_{i}} & R_{\sigma_{2}} \cong \mathbb{C}[u, v, w, t] /\left(u v-(1+w) t, t^{k+1}\right) \\
\left(u, f_{\rho} u\right) & \longleftarrow u  \tag{5.28}\\
\left(f_{\rho}, v\right) & \longleftrightarrow v \\
(w, w) & \longleftarrow
\end{align*}
$$

So we learned, that outside codimension 2 , we have two toric models, given by $(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P}, \varphi)$. Namely, if $\sigma$ is maximal we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\sigma}^{k}=A_{k}\left[\Lambda_{\sigma}\right] \tag{5.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A_{k}=\mathbb{C}[t] /\left(t^{k+1}\right)$ and $\Lambda_{\sigma}=\mathbb{Z}^{d}$, i.e. $M_{\sigma}$ where $\sigma$ lives. We should think of this has an integral tangent vector on $\sigma$. Then for a codimension 1 thing $\rho \in \mathcal{P}^{[d-1]}$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\rho}^{k}=A_{k}\left[\Lambda_{\rho}\right]\left[Z_{+}, Z_{-}\right] / /\left(Z_{+} Z_{-}-f_{\rho} t^{\kappa_{\rho}(\varphi)}\right) \tag{5.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\kappa_{\rho}(\varphi) \in \mathbb{N} \backslash\{0\}$ is the kink of $\varphi$ along $\rho$, and $f_{\rho} \in A_{k}\left[\Lambda_{\rho}\right]$. So this is the sense in which it is living on a wall.

## 4. Reconstruction

This is the question of how to go from $(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P}, \varphi)$ to $(\mathcal{X} \rightarrow s)$. The point is that we will build $\mathcal{X}$ by gluing (fibered coproduct) of $\operatorname{Spec} R_{\rho}^{k}$ and $\operatorname{Spec} R_{\rho}^{k}$. Explicitly our starting data is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathcal{B}=\bigcup_{\sigma \in \mathcal{P}} \sigma, \varphi, f_{\rho} \in A_{k}\left[\Lambda_{\rho}\right]\right) \tag{5.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

4.1. Explanation without scattering. A fan structure at $v_{1}$ is given by


A fan structure at $v_{2}$ is given by


These will have different affine structures. We can fix this by removing one point on the internal edge. Here we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{\rho, v_{1}}=\alpha+w \tag{5.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}^{\times}$and $w=W / Z$.
For $R_{\rho, v_{1}}^{k}$ we get

$$
\begin{align*}
& Z_{+}=y=Y / Z  \tag{5.35}\\
& Z_{-}=x=X / Z \tag{5.36}
\end{align*}
$$

with the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z_{+} Z_{-}=(\alpha+w) \cdot t \tag{5.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then homogenizing we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{Y}{Z} \frac{X}{Z}=(\alpha+W / z) t \tag{5.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is (non-toric) a generation family of conics. If we did a Mumford type degeneration this $\alpha z+w$ would be a $w$.

Similarly, for $R_{\rho, v_{2}}^{k}$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z_{+}=y=\frac{Y}{w} \quad Z_{-}=x z^{-1}=\frac{X}{W} \frac{W}{Z}=\frac{X}{Z} \tag{5.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

so

$$
\begin{equation*}
Z_{+} Z_{-}=(z \alpha+1) t \tag{5.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

and after homogenizing we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{Y}{W} \frac{X}{Z}=\left(\frac{Z}{W} \alpha+1\right) t \tag{5.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

so

$$
\begin{equation*}
X Y=(Z \alpha+W) Z \cdot t \tag{5.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

The upshot is that we obtain consistent models

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{\rho, v_{1}}=z^{m_{v_{1}, v_{2}}^{\rho}} f_{\rho, v_{2}} \tag{5.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $m_{v_{1}, v_{2}}^{\rho} \in \Lambda_{\rho}$. In the example $m_{v_{1}, v_{2}}^{\rho}=(0,1)$. So add this to our data:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P}, \varphi,\left\{f_{\rho, v}\right\}\right) \tag{5.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

4.1.1. Propagation. Consider four copies of the quadrant glued together:


The toric model at $v$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{k}[x, y, z, w] /(x y-t, z w-t) \tag{5.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now take $f_{\rho_{1}}=1+y$. The local model for $R_{\rho_{1}}^{k}$ is $z w=(1+y) t$. But then for $x \neq 0$ we have $y=x^{-1} t$, which implies we need a local model

$$
\begin{equation*}
z w=\left(1+x^{-1} t\right) t \tag{5.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

This forces us to set

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{\rho_{2}}=\left(1+x^{-1} t\right) \tag{5.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can visualize this by saying that each wall carries the data of a monomial.
4.1.2. Walls leaving the codimension 1 locus.


The toric model is $x y z=t$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{\rho_{1}}=1+x=1+(y z)^{-1} t \tag{5.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

To make this consist, take two copies of $R_{\sigma}^{k}$ and glue by a (non-toric) "wall-crossing" automorphism $\Phi$. In particular it maps

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y \stackrel{\Phi}{\longmapsto}\left(1+y^{-1} z^{-1} t\right) t \\
& z \longmapsto \underbrace{\left(1+y^{-1} z^{-1} t\right)^{-1}}_{\equiv 1 \bmod t} t
\end{aligned}
$$

Lecture 25;
November 26, 2019

## 5. Wall structures

5.1. Walls. Fix $A=\mathbb{C}[t] /\left(t^{k+1}\right)$ for fixed $k$. Eventually $k \rightarrow \infty$. As usual we have the starting data

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathcal{B}=\bigcup_{\sigma \in \mathcal{P}} \sigma, \mathcal{P}=\{\sigma\}, \varphi\right) \tag{5.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

with an $\mathbb{Z}$-affine structure. The singular locus $\Delta \subset \mathcal{B}$ has $\operatorname{Codim}_{\mathbb{R}} \Delta=2$.
Definition 5.4. A wall $\mathfrak{p}$ on $\mathcal{B}$ is

- a rational polyhedral subset $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq \sigma$ (for $\operatorname{dim} \sigma=d$ ) such that $\operatorname{dim} \mathfrak{p}=d-1$ and $\operatorname{int}(\mathfrak{p} \cap \Delta)=\emptyset$,
- a function $f_{\mathfrak{p}}=\sum c_{m} z^{m}$ where $m \in \Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} \subset \Lambda_{\sigma} \simeq \mathbb{Z}^{d}, c_{m} \in A$.

In codimension $0, \mathfrak{p} \cap \operatorname{int}(\sigma) \neq \emptyset$ implies $f_{\mathfrak{p}}=1+c_{m} z^{m}$ for $c_{m}=0 \bmod t$. The $m$ is telling us the propagation direction. We call these proper walls. In codimension 1, i.e. $\mathfrak{p} \subseteq \rho$ (with $\operatorname{dim} \rho=d-1$ ) we have $f_{\mathfrak{p}}=f_{\underline{\rho}}$ for some $\underline{\rho} \subset \rho$. We call these slabs. Then a wall structure $\mathscr{S}$ is a finite collection of walls (for finite $k$ ).
5.2. Wall crossing. Let $\left(\mathfrak{p}, f_{\mathfrak{p}}\right)$ denote a codimension 0 wall where $\mathfrak{p} \subset \sigma$. Write

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\sigma}=A\left[\Lambda_{\sigma}\right] \simeq A\left[z_{1}^{ \pm 1}, \ldots z_{d}^{ \pm 1}\right] \tag{5.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the wall gives an automorphism

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta_{\mathfrak{p}}: R_{\sigma} \rightarrow R_{\sigma} \tag{5.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

which sends

$$
\begin{equation*}
z^{m} \mapsto f_{\mathfrak{p}}^{\left\langle n_{\mathfrak{p}}, m\right\rangle} \cdot z^{m} \tag{5.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $n_{\mathfrak{p}} \in \Lambda_{\sigma}^{*}$ and $n_{\mathfrak{p}}^{\perp}=\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}}$. This is an automorphism since $\theta_{\mathfrak{p}} \equiv \mathrm{id} \bmod t$.
Example 5.5. Consider the wall:


Now we will cross from $x$ towards $z$. First we have $f_{\mathfrak{p}}=1+t^{2} x^{-1} z^{-1}$. Then the map $\theta_{\mathfrak{p}}$ maps

$$
\begin{equation*}
x \mapsto\left(1+t^{2} x^{-1} z^{-1}\right) x \quad z \mapsto\left(1+t^{2} x^{-1} z^{-1}\right)^{-1} z \tag{5.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 5.6. Propagating walls intersect along codimension 2 polyhedral subsets called joins. Take the following notation:


Then by crossing the walls we get:

$$
\begin{align*}
x & \longmapsto(1+w) x \\
& \longmapsto\left(1+(1+y)^{-1} w\right) x \\
& \longmapsto\left(1+(1+(1+w) y)^{-1} w\right)(1+w)^{-1} \cdot x  \tag{5.59}\\
& \longmapsto \underbrace{\left(1+(1+(1+(1+y) w) y)^{-1}(1+y) w\right)(1+(1+y) w)^{-1} x}_{g}
\end{align*}
$$

Now this look terrible but really

$$
\begin{align*}
g & =\left(1+((1+y)+(1+y) w y)^{-1}(1+y) w\right)(1+(1+y) w)^{-1} x  \tag{5.60}\\
& =\left(1+(1+w y)^{-1} w\right)(1+w+w y)^{-1} x  \tag{5.61}\\
& =(1+w y)^{-1}(1+w y+w)(1+w+w y)^{-1} x  \tag{5.62}\\
& =(1+w y)^{-1} x \tag{5.63}
\end{align*}
$$

This tells us that to make this consistent, we need to insert a wall in the upper right diagonal direction with the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1+w y) \tag{5.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the theory is so beautiful, that this works no matter which monomial we start with.
The observation (due to Kontsevich-Soibelman) is as follows. Assuming all walls carry function congruent to $1 \bmod t$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta=\underbrace{\theta_{\mathfrak{p}_{1}} \ldots \theta_{\mathfrak{p}_{r}}}_{\text {counterclockwise }} \equiv \mathrm{id} \bmod t^{k} \tag{5.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

then there is a unique way to insert walls with functions $1+c t^{k+1} z^{m}$ to achieve

$$
\begin{equation*}
\prod \theta_{\mathfrak{p}}=\mathrm{id} \bmod t^{k+1} \tag{5.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

5.3. Construction of $\mathcal{X}^{\circ}=\mathcal{X} \backslash \operatorname{Codim} 2$. Recall the goal is to go from $(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P}, \varphi)$ and $f_{\underline{\rho}}$ to

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathcal{X}_{k}=\mathcal{X}_{0}=\bigcup \text { toric varieties }  \tag{5.67}\\
\downarrow \\
\left.\quad \begin{array}{l}
\downarrow \\
S_{k}=\operatorname{Spec} \\
\mathbb{C}
\end{array} t\right] /\left(t^{k+1}\right)
\end{gather*}
$$

Assume we have consistency of $\mathscr{S}$ in codimension 0 and codimension 1. Then define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}^{\circ}:=\underset{\longrightarrow}{\lim }\left\{\operatorname{Spec} R_{\mathfrak{e}}, \operatorname{Spec} R_{\mathfrak{u}}\right\} \tag{5.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

via wall crossings and canonical localizations $R_{\mathfrak{e}} \rightarrow R_{\mathfrak{u}}$ for $\mathfrak{e} \subset \mathfrak{u}$. Then $\mathcal{B} \backslash \bigcup_{\mathfrak{p} \in \mathcal{S}} \mathfrak{p}$ gives rise to closures of connected components (WLOG we can assume convex) $\mathfrak{u} \subseteq \sigma$, and $R_{\mathfrak{u}}:=R_{\sigma}$. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mathfrak{e}}=A\left[\Lambda_{\mathfrak{e}}\right]\left[z_{+}, z_{-}\right] /\left(z_{+} z_{-}-f_{\mathfrak{e}} \cdot t^{\kappa} \underline{\rho}\right) . \tag{5.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

5.4. Consistency in all codimensions/broken lines. Now we have broken lines $\beta$. Inductively we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\theta_{\mathfrak{p}_{j}}\left(b_{j-1} z^{m_{j-1}}\right)=\sum a_{i} z^{m_{i}} \tag{5.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $b_{j} z^{m_{j}} \in\left\{a_{i} z^{m_{i}}\right\}$.
Definition 5.5. $\mathscr{S}=\{\mathfrak{p}\}$ is consistent if locally sums over broken lines give well-defined functions.

Example 5.7. Let $m_{0}=(-1,0)$ and $z^{m_{0}}=x$. Then the broken walls look like:

5.5. Canonical functions - generalized theta functions. Assume $\mathscr{S}$ is consistent (in codimension $\leq 2$ ), $m$ asymptotic integral vector field. By the same construction, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vartheta \in \mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{X}^{\circ}\right) \tag{5.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

defined by sums over broken lines. On $R_{\mathfrak{u}}=A\left[\Lambda_{\sigma}\right]$, for $\mathfrak{u} \subset \sigma$, define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vartheta_{m}=\sum_{\substack{\text { with asymptotic } z^{m} \\ \text { endpt } p}} b_{\beta} z^{m_{\beta}} . \tag{5.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is independent of $p$.
5.6. Construction of $\mathcal{X} \rightarrow \operatorname{Spec} A$.

THEOREM 5.7. For $s S$ a consistent wall structure on $(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{P}, \varphi)$ there exists a partial completion $\mathcal{X} \supset \mathcal{X}^{\circ}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}_{0}=\bigcup_{\sigma \in \mathcal{P}} \mathbb{P}(\sigma) \tag{5.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. In the affine case (i.e. $\mathcal{P}$ without bounded cells, i.e. each cell is a cone) then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}=\operatorname{Spec} \oplus_{m \in \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{Z})} A \cdot \vartheta_{m} \tag{5.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the general case, apply the affine case to $\operatorname{Tot}\left(\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{X}} \circ(-1)\right)$. So we use the fact that for a projective variety

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bigoplus_{d \geq 0} \Gamma\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}(d)\right) \Gamma\left(L, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right) \tag{5.76}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $L \downarrow X$ is the total space of $\mathcal{O}_{X}(-1)$.
On the level of $\mathcal{B}$, we take the truncated cone over $\mathcal{B}$.
5.7. Construction of consistent wall structures. A first approach is done in [16]. $\mathcal{B}$ has affine charts near vertices $\left(\Delta \cap\left|\mathcal{P}^{[0]}\right|=\emptyset\right)$. $\mathcal{X}$ is mirror to $\mathcal{Y} / \check{S}$ with $\mathcal{Y}_{0}$ the union of toric varieties. This is an inductive construction via scattering. This needs "local rigidity" in codimension 2 of initial data $f_{\rho, v}=f_{\underline{\rho}}$.

The second approach in [14] uses the approach that this scattering corresponds to relative Gromov-Witten theory on toric surfaces. Then $\mathcal{X}$ is mirror to $(Y, D)$ a log CY surface on $\mathcal{Y} / \check{S}$ where $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{Y}_{0}=2$. This let to the results of $[\mathbf{1 3}]$. So this is some kind of hybrid approach.

Then in an upcoming work, by $\log$ GW-theory on $(Y, D)$ (or $\left.\left(\mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{Y}_{0}\right)\right)$ where $\mathcal{Y}$ is the union of tropicalizations of holomorphic curves.

## 6. Intrinsic mirror map

Insert here Professor Siebert's talk from the geometry seminar a few weeks ago. The point here is to construct (homogeneous) coordinate ring (mirror to ( $Y, D$ ) (or $\mathcal{Y}$ )) via punctured Gromov-Witten theory. So this is log GW invariants with contact orders which can be negative. This comes without an explicit use of wall structures. The point is that we get complete control of the mirror construction: $(X, D) \sim \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow S^{\prime}\left(\right.$ or $\left.\mathcal{X} \rightarrow S \sim \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow S^{\prime}\right)$ via $\log$ GW theory on $X$ or $\mathcal{X}$ (really this is clsoed string theory $g=0$ ).

In the affine case we start with a pair $(Y, D)$ where $D=\cup D_{i} \subseteq Y$ is a normal crossings divisor. Then we require that we have a numerical equivalence

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{Y}+D \sim \sum a_{i} D_{i} \tag{5.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $a_{i} \geq 0$. This is all we will require of a $\log \mathrm{CY}$. ${ }^{5.3}$
Example 5.8. Consider $\mathbb{P}^{2}$. Recall $\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{Z})$ is the union of three copies of $\mathbb{N}^{2}$. Then for some $(a, b)$ for $a, b>0$ this gives us $u \mapsto\left(u^{a}, u^{b}\right)$. The generators of the ring are in one-to-one correspondence with contact orders. The multiplication rule is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vartheta_{m_{1}} \cdot \vartheta_{m_{2}} \sum_{p} N_{m_{1}, m_{2}, p} \vartheta_{p} \tag{5.78}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $N_{m_{1}, m_{2}, p}$ is the number of genus 0 curves with contacts $m_{1}, m_{2},-p$ with $D$. The hard part is showing associativity.

[^18]For proper CY we have

| $\mathcal{Y}$ | $\supset$ | $\mathcal{Y}_{0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\downarrow$ |  | $\downarrow$ |
| $S$ | $\supset$ | $\{0\}$ |

and then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}=\operatorname{Proj}\left(\bigoplus A \cdot \vartheta_{m}\right) \tag{5.80}
\end{equation*}
$$

The challenges are as follows:
Lecture 26;

- extract variations of Hodge structures and closed Gromov-Witten invariants (genus

December 3, 2019 0)

- Homological Mirror Symmetry (HMS)
- other mirror phenomenon (wide open)
$-g>0$ (non-commutative, phantom integrability)
- hyper-Kähler (AAB branes, geometric Langlands)
- Donaldson-Thomas theory


## CHAPTER 6

## A peek into Homological Mirror Symmetry

This is a bit more subtle than just saying the derived category is the Fukaya category. Throughout, $(X, \omega)$ will be a compact CY.

## 1. Overview

So far we have looked at closed strings in these pictures as in Fig. 1.
Then we have an $A$-model (GW) and a $B$-model (VHS), given by topological twists. HMS is the open string version of this pictorially shown in Fig. 2.


Figure 1. A closed string propagating through time and splitting into two strings.


Figure 2. An open string propagating through time with boundary conditions $L_{0}$ and $L_{1}$.


Figure 3. A map $u: \Delta \rightarrow X$ from the open disk to our manifold which sends the boundary to Lagrangians $L_{i}$. This should be thought of as an open string being born and dying.


Figure 4. A map $u: \Delta \rightarrow X$ where we have three marked points and send the portions of the boundary to three different Lagrangians. We will eventually count things like this to put an algebraic structure on the sets of intersection points between Lagrangians.

So we have some open strings propagating through space with some boundary conditions $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$. Then we twist this to get the $A$-model, given by the Fukaya category $\mathcal{F}(X)$ in genus $0 .{ }^{6.1}$ The $B$-model is given by the derived category $D^{b}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$.
1.1. $A$ and $B$-models. Pictorially, we have strings being born and dying as in Fig. 3. So this is some kind of quantum correction between these intersection points. Then in general we have polygons as in Fig. 4.

The boundary conditions are given by the set of "objects" $\operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ and the intersections of boundary conditions given by the set of "morphisms" $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathcal{A})$. Propagation of strings is then given by composition of morphisms $m_{k}$. Pictures as in Figs. 3 and 4 give algebraic structure for the $m_{k}$.

Let $(X, \omega)$ be a symplectic manifold with $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathbb{C}} X=d$. When $\mathcal{A}=\mathcal{F}(X)$, the objects are Lagrangian submanifolds, i.e. submanifolds $L \subset X$ such that $\operatorname{dim} L=d$ and $\left.\omega\right|_{L=0}$. Then propagating strings correspond to maps $u: \Delta \rightarrow X$ where $\Delta=\{|z| \leq 1\} \subset \mathbb{C}$ is the closed unit disk. For $L \pitchfork L^{\prime}$ Lagrangians intersecting transversely, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{hom}\left(L, L^{\prime}\right)=\mathbb{C}^{L \cap L^{\prime}} \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^19]

Figure 5. The type of disk we count when defining $m_{k}$.

Really we want to equip these Lagrangians with $U(1)$-bundles and then instead of $\mathbb{C}$ we want sections. Then the

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{k}: \operatorname{Hom}\left(L_{k}, L_{k-1}\right) \otimes \ldots \operatorname{Hom}\left(L_{1}, L_{0}\right) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}\left(L_{0}, L_{k}\right) \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

have to do with counting maps $u: \Delta \rightarrow X$ (such that $u(\partial D) \subset L_{0} \cup \ldots \cup L_{k}$ ) as in Fig. 5 .
In the $B$-model we have the category $D^{b}\left(\mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$. The objects are complexes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}=\left(\cdots \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{-r} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}^{-r-1} \rightarrow \cdots\right) \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

with bounded ${ }^{6.2}$ cohomology

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{i}\left(\mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right)=0 \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

if $|i| \gg 0$.
Why does this matter? The closed story is really enumerative, which not so many people care about. But this open story brings in new objects that many people care about. Lagrangians are the holy grail of symplectic geometry; derived categories matter for geometric representation theory, algebraic geometry, etc.
1.2. Algebraic structure. The moduli space of domains (stable disks) has a recursive structure.

Example 6.1. Consider a disk with 4 marked points on the boundary. Maps defined on this are what we count for $m_{3}$. This can degenerate in many ways, two of which are shown in Fig. 6. We want to view 0 as the outgoing point, and the others as incoming. We can encode these degenerations as rooted (metric) ribbon ${ }^{6.3}$ trees. The associated trees are shown in Fig. 6.

The result is that for $L_{0}, \ldots, L_{k}$ mutually transverse, we can define

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{k}: \operatorname{Hom}\left(L_{k}, L_{k-1}\right) \otimes \ldots \otimes \operatorname{Hom}\left(L_{1}, L_{0}\right) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}\left(L_{0}, L_{k}\right)[2-k] \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

by (virtually) counting $J$-holomorphic maps from disks to $X$. The virtual dimension of this moduli space is

$$
\begin{equation*}
(k-2)+d_{0}-\sum_{i=1}^{k} d_{i} \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^20]

Figure 6. Two of the ways this disk can degenerate and the associated rooted ribbon trees.

The intersection points have (in good situations) a $\mathbb{Z}$-grading, so this is what this $[2-k]$ means. Then the algebraic relations between the $m_{k}$ come from studying boundaries of high-dimensional moduli spaces.

Example 6.2. (a) The first relation says that $m_{1}^{2}=0$, i.e. $m_{1}$ is a differential. We get this as follows. Take two Lagrangians $L_{0}$ and $L_{1}$. We want the difference of the degrees of the intersection points to be 2 so we get strip-breaking. So $m_{1}$ is a differential on

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bigoplus_{L, L^{\prime}, d} \operatorname{Hom}\left(L, L^{\prime}\right) \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

(b) We have the relation

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{1} m_{2}=m_{2}\left(m_{1} \otimes \mathrm{id}+\mathrm{id} \otimes m_{1}\right) \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

which means $m_{1}$ satisfies the Leibniz rule with respect to $m_{2}$.
(c) Unfortunately $m_{2}$ is not really associative, but $m_{3}$ is some kind of associator. In particular, we get the relation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{2}\left(\mathrm{id} \otimes m_{2}-m_{2} \otimes \mathrm{id}\right)=m_{1} m_{3}+m_{3}\left(m_{1} \otimes \mathrm{id} \otimes \mathrm{id}+\mathrm{id} \otimes m_{1} \otimes \mathrm{id}+\mathrm{id} \otimes \mathrm{id} \otimes m_{1}\right) \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that the first term is a coboundary, and the second vanishes on cocycles with respect to $m_{1}$.
(d) Generally we have the formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\substack{p, q \\ p \geq 1, q \geq 0 \\ p+q \leq k}}(-1)^{\left|a_{1}\right|+\ldots+\left|a_{q}\right|-q} m_{k-p+1}\left(a_{k}, \ldots, a_{p+q+1}, m_{p}\left(a_{p+q}, \ldots, a_{q+1}\right), a_{q}, \ldots, a_{1}\right)=0 \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

These are called the $A_{\infty}$ relations.
1.3. The Fukaya category. We can define the products $m_{k}$ for mutually transverse Lagrangians $L_{0}, \ldots, L_{k}$, assuming $c_{1}(X)=0, X$ is compact, and all $L_{i}$ are oriented, spin, graded, and unobstructed. ${ }^{6.4}$ There is a natural ground field called the Novikov field

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Lambda_{\mathrm{nov}}=\left\{\sum_{i \geq 0} a_{i} q^{\lambda_{i}} \mid \lambda_{i} \in \mathbb{R}, \lambda_{i} \rightarrow \infty, a_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}\right\} \tag{6.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

We could also take the $a_{i} \in \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{C}$. The point is that the $a_{i}$ are the number of holomorphic disks, and the $\lambda_{i}$ are the symplectic area of our disks:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\Delta} u^{*} \omega \tag{6.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

A priori this is only an $A_{\infty}$ pre-category since $\operatorname{Hom}(L, L)$ doesn't make sense. But we can use Hamiltonian perturbations to fix this. Given $L, L^{\prime}$ choose $H_{t}: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, t \in[0,1]$ giving a Hamiltonian flow $\varphi^{t}$ such that $\varphi^{1}\left(L^{\prime}\right) \pitchfork L$. One shows that the resulting $A_{\infty}$ category $\mathcal{F}(X)$ is well-defined up to canonical $A_{\infty}$ quasi-isomorphism. Now we finally actually define the following.

Definition 6.1. A (non-unital) $A_{\infty}$-algebra is a $\mathbb{Z}$-graded $K$ vector space

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\bigoplus_{p \in \mathbb{Z}} A_{p} \tag{6.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

and graded (degree 0) $k$-linear morphisms

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{k}: A^{\otimes k} \rightarrow A[2-k] \tag{6.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any $k \geq 1$ satisfying the $A_{\infty}$ relations.
Definition 6.2. A (non-unital) $A_{\infty}$-category $\mathcal{A}$ consists of some objects $\operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ and for all $X_{0}, X_{1} \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ a $\mathbb{Z}$-graded $K$-vector space

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) \tag{6.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and for all $k \geq 1$

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{k}: \operatorname{Hom}\left(X_{k}, X_{k-1}\right) \otimes \ldots \otimes \operatorname{Hom}\left(X_{1}, X_{0}\right) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}\left(X_{0}, X_{k}\right)[2-k] \tag{6.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

fulfilling the $A_{\infty}$ relations.
Note that we get an honest category from an $A_{\infty}$-category by taking the associated homological category $H(\mathcal{F}(X))$ with $m_{1}=0$. This has the same objects, but when we take Hom we pass to cohomology.

FACT 9. $H(\mathcal{F}(X))$ is unital, i.e. for all $L$ there exists some $e_{L} \in \operatorname{Hom}^{0}(L, L)$ such that $m_{1}\left(e_{L}\right)=0$, it behaves as a unit wrt $m_{2}$, and annihilates all $m_{k}$ for $k>2$.

One calls such a category cohomologically unital (or c-unital). This is a bit annoying, but there is a trick where our c-unital $\mathcal{F}(X)$ can be shown to be $A_{\infty}$ quasi-equivalent to a unital $A_{\infty}$ category.

[^21]1.4. The "derived" Fukaya category. We might be confused now, because we are supposed to match this $A_{\infty}$ category to this derived category which is triangulated. Kontsevich offers a solution by making $\mathcal{A}=\mathcal{F}(X)$ into a "triangulated $A_{\infty}$-category" by adding artificial complexes to get $\operatorname{Tw} \mathcal{F}(X)$. In particular, for $L_{1}, \ldots, L_{k}$ we have $\Delta=\left(\delta_{i j}\right) \in \operatorname{Hom}^{1}\left(L_{j}, L_{i}\right)$ such that

- (strictly lower triangular) $\delta_{i j}=0$ for all $j \geq i$,
- (Maurer-Cartan)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k \geq 1} m_{k}(\Delta, \ldots, \Delta)=\sum_{i_{1}<\ldots, i_{k} ; k \geq 1} m_{k}\left(\delta_{i_{k}, i_{k-1}}, \ldots, \delta_{i_{2}, i_{1}}\right) \tag{6.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lecture 27;
December 5, 2019
1.5. Homological mirror symmetry. Now we offer a precise statement of HMS. Recall the Fukaya category had coefficients in this Novikov field $\Lambda_{\text {nov }}$. Take complex coefficients $\mathbb{K}=\Lambda_{\text {nov }} \otimes \mathbb{C}$. For $(X, \omega)$ compact $C Y$, we get a mirror (maximal) degeneration $\mathcal{Y} / S$. In particular we will work over $S=\operatorname{Spec} \mathbb{K}$. Then HMS asserts that:

Conjecture 1. There exists a canonical equivalence of $A_{\infty}$ categories over $\mathbb{K}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi: D^{b} \mathcal{F}(X)=H\left(\mathrm{Tw}^{\Pi} \mathcal{F}(X)\right) \rightarrow D^{b}(\mathcal{Y}) \tag{6.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

This $\mathrm{Tw}^{\Pi} \mathcal{F}(X)$ is called the split closure. Said differently, this is the completion of the twisted Fukaya category by idempotents.

## 2. $D_{d g}^{b}(X)$ and the HPL

2.1. Čech model of $D^{b}(X)$. A dg category is an $A_{\infty}$ category where $m_{k}=0$ for $k>2$. We want to describe the $A_{\infty}$ structure on $D^{b}(X)$. The point is that when we start with something which is $A_{\infty}$ and complete, and pass to cohomology, we get something which is $A_{\infty}$. The homological perturbation lemma (HPL) tells us that when we start with something which is only dg , we still get something which is only $A_{\infty}$.

Assume $X$ is smooth and projective. This means that for any coherent $\mathcal{O}_{X}$-module has a finite locally free resolution. This also means that

$$
\begin{equation*}
D^{b}(X)=D^{b}(\mathbf{C o h} X)=D^{b}(\operatorname{Perf} X) \tag{6.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

In general, the perfect complexes are the compact objects. But if we are projective from the beginning, the objects are compact anyway.

Then the dg enhancement is as follows. The objects of $D_{d g}^{b}(X)$ are bounded complexes of locally free sheaves as before. The morphisms are the interesting part. Write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathfrak{U}=\left\{U_{i}\right\} \tag{6.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

for an affine cover of $X$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right):=\bigoplus \operatorname{Hom}_{D_{d g}^{b}(X)}^{n}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right) \tag{6.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}_{D_{d g}^{b}}^{n}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right)=\bigoplus_{p+q=n} \check{C}^{p}\left(\mathfrak{U}, \mathcal{H o m}_{\mathcal{O}_{X}}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}[q]\right)\right) \tag{6.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

We write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H o m}_{\mathcal{O}_{X}}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}[q]\right)=\mathcal{H o m}_{\mathcal{O}_{X}}^{q}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right) \tag{6.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\check{C}^{p}$ denotes the the Čech $p$-cochains:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bigoplus_{i_{0}<\ldots<i_{p}} \Gamma\left(U_{i_{0}} \cap \ldots \cap U_{i_{p}}, \cdot\right) \tag{6.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

This forms a dg-category with differential $m_{1}$ given by the Cech differential. For

$$
\begin{align*}
& f=\left(f_{n, i_{1}, \ldots, i_{p}}\right) \in \check{C}^{p}\left(\mathfrak{U}, \operatorname{Hom}^{q}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right)\right)  \tag{6.25}\\
& f=\left(f_{n^{\prime}, i_{1}, \ldots, i_{p^{\prime}}}\right) \in \check{C}^{p^{\prime}}\left(\mathfrak{U}, \mathcal{H o m}^{q^{\prime}}\left(\mathcal{E}^{\bullet}, \mathcal{F}^{\bullet}\right)\right) \tag{6.26}
\end{align*}
$$

composition is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{2}(g, f)=(-1)^{\operatorname{deg} f} g \circ f \tag{6.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
g \circ f=\left.\left((-1)^{q^{\prime} p} g_{n+q, i_{0}, \ldots, i_{p^{\prime}}} \circ f_{n, i_{p^{\prime}}, \ldots, i_{p+p^{\prime}}}\right)\right|_{U_{i_{0} \ldots, i_{p+p^{\prime}}}} \tag{6.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.2. The HPL.

Theorem 6.1. For any $A_{\infty}$ category $\mathcal{A}$ there exists an $A_{\infty}$ category structure on $H(\mathcal{A})$ with $m_{1}=0$ (this is what is called a minimal $A_{\infty}$ category) and an $A_{\infty}$ quasi-equivalence $H(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$.

Proof. The construction depends on a choice, for any $x, y \in \operatorname{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ of a projector $\Pi$ and a homotopy $H$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Pi: \operatorname{Hom}(X, Y) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}(X, Y)  \tag{6.29}\\
& H: \operatorname{Hom}(X, Y) \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}(X, Y)[-1] \tag{6.30}
\end{align*}
$$

(where $\Pi$ is of degree 0 and $\Pi^{2}=\Pi$ ) such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi-\mathrm{id}=m_{1} \circ H+H \circ m_{1} \tag{6.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

This will give $\varphi$. Here we want $\varphi$ to be a quasi-equivalence. Choose $\Pi$ as a projection to representations of cohomology classes.

Then we get a new $A_{\infty}$ category $\Pi \mathcal{A}$. The objects are the same, and the morphisms are:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Hom}_{\Pi \mathcal{A}}(X, Y)=\Pi\left(\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y)\right) \subset \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \tag{6.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies $H(\Pi \mathcal{A})=H(\mathcal{A})$ as a category. Now define the $m_{i}$ as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
& m_{1}^{\Pi}:=m_{1}  \tag{6.33}\\
& m_{2}^{\Pi}:=\Pi \circ m_{2}  \tag{6.34}\\
& m_{k}^{\Pi}:=\sum_{\substack{T \text { rooted } \\
\text { ribbon tree } \\
k \text { leaves }}} m_{k, T} \tag{6.35}
\end{align*}
$$

We should think of these as Feynman rules. In particular, $m_{k, T}$ is defined as $m_{k}$ at each interior vertex of valency $k+1$, an $H \circ$ at an interior edge, and a $\Pi \circ$ at a root vertex.

Example 6.3. Let $k=6$. Then one of the rooted ribbon trees being summer over is pictured in Fig. 7. In particular this contributes:

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{k, T}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{6}\right)=\Pi \circ m_{3}\left(a_{1}, H \circ m_{2}\left(H \circ m_{3}\left(a_{2}, a_{3}, a_{4}\right), a_{5}\right), a_{6}\right) \tag{6.36}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 7. A rooted ribbon tree contributing to the definition of $m_{6}^{\Pi}$.

Lemma 6.2. The $m_{k}^{\Pi}$ fulfill the $A_{\infty}$ relations.
Remark 6.1. There exists an $A_{\infty}$-functor

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(i_{k}\right): \Pi \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A} \tag{6.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $H\left(m_{k}^{\Pi}\right)$ the $A_{\infty}$ structure on $H(\mathcal{A})$. This is defined by a similar construction:

$$
\begin{equation*}
i_{k}:=\sum_{\substack{T \text { rooted } \\ \text { ribbon tree } \\ k \text { leaves }}} i_{k, T} \tag{6.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $i_{k, T}$ are defined as the $m_{k, T}$ were, but with the $\Pi$ s at the root vertices replaced by $H \mathrm{~s}$.

Lemma 6.3. $\left(i_{k}\right)$ is an $A_{\infty}$ functor.

Sketch proof of Lemma 6.2. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{k}=\sum_{\substack{T \text { ribbon tree } \\ e \text { edge }}} \mu_{k,(T, e)} \tag{6.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $\mu_{k,(T, e)}$ are defined as $m_{k, T}$ but with $H$ at the edge $e$ replaced by $\Pi=\mathrm{id}=$ $m_{1} \circ H-H \circ m_{1}$ and $m_{1}$ at each external edge.

Then either
(i) using $\Pi-\mathrm{id}$, order by edges $e$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{k}=\underbrace{\mu_{k}^{m_{1}}}_{e \text { external }}+\underbrace{\mu_{k}^{\Pi}-\mu_{k}^{\mathrm{id}}}_{e \text { internal }} \tag{6.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

or
(ii) using $m_{1} \circ H+H \circ m_{1}$, order by internal vertices adjacent to $e$.

Now apply $A_{\infty}$ for $m_{l}$ to obtain a new sum over trees with each summand appearing in $\mu_{k}^{\text {id }}$. The signs work out, so we get $\mu_{k}=-\mu_{k}^{\text {id }}$. Then (6.40) implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{k}^{m_{1}}+\mu_{k}^{\Pi}=0 \tag{6.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then these turn out to be the $A_{\infty}$ relations for $m_{k}^{\Pi}$.

## 3. Polishchuk's rigidiy theorem

3.1. Reducing to the algebra $A_{L}$. Let $L \in D^{b}(X)$ be an ample line bundle on a projective variety $X$. Then we get a full subcategory $\langle L\rangle$ of $D_{d g}^{b}(X)$ with objects $L^{n}$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then $m_{2}$ on $D^{b}(X)=H\left(D_{d g}^{b}(X)\right)$ given by the cup product on

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{L}=\bigoplus_{p, q \in \mathbb{Z}} H^{p}\left(X, L^{q}\right) \tag{6.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we observe that $A_{L}$ contains the homogeneous coordinate ring:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{L} \supseteq R_{L}=\bigoplus_{n \geq 0} H_{0}\left(X, L^{n}\right) \tag{6.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a minimal ${ }^{6.5} A_{\infty}$ algebra, and that $\langle L\rangle$ split-generates $D^{b}(X)$. Therefore $D^{b}(X)$ as an $A_{\infty}$-category is characterized by $A_{L}$ as an $A_{\infty}$ algebra.

Lecture 28;
December 10, 2019
3.2. $A_{\infty}$ structures on $A_{L}$. Then we have the following question:

Question 1. How much information does the $A_{\infty}$ structure on $A_{L}$ (beyond $m_{2}$ ) hold?
Remark 6.2. For $X$ CY and $\operatorname{dim} X=d$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{L}=\bigoplus_{p \geq 0, q \in \mathbb{Z}} H^{p}\left(X, L^{\otimes q}\right)=\bigoplus_{q \geq 0} H^{0}\left(X, L^{\otimes q}\right) \oplus \bigoplus_{q<0} \underbrace{H^{d}\left(X, L^{\otimes q}\right)}_{\simeq H^{0}\left(X, L^{\otimes-q}\right)^{*}} \tag{6.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 6.3. This has an internal grading given by powers of $L$.
THEOREM 6.4 (Polishchuk). Let $X$ be a projective variety, $\operatorname{dim} X=d$, and $L$ very ample. Let $H^{q}\left(X, L^{\otimes p}\right)=0$ for all $p$ and all $q \neq 0$. Then:
(i) Up to strict $A_{\infty}$-isomorphisms $\left(\left(f_{n}\right), f_{1}=\mathrm{id)}\right.$ and scaling, there exists a unique non-trivial ( $m_{k} \neq 0$ for some $k>2$ ) $A_{\infty}$ structure on $A_{L}$ preserving the internal grading.
(ii) The strict $A_{\infty}$ isomorphism is unique up to homotopy.

Remark 6.4. This says that we can somehow localize the content of HMS. The point of this rigidity is that to prove HMS, we just need to equate the rings and show this little extra information is the same.
3.3. $A_{\infty}$-structures and Hochschild cocycles. Let $A=\bigoplus_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} A_{k}$ be a graded algebra and $\left(m_{n}\right),\left(m_{n}^{\prime}\right)$ be two $A_{\infty}$ refinements (where $m_{1}=m_{1}^{\prime}=0$ and $m_{2}=m_{2}^{\prime}$ are the given multiplication). Then we can observe that if $m_{i}=m_{i}^{\prime}$ for all $i<n$ then
(i) $c=m_{n}-m_{n}^{\prime}$ is a Hochschild $n$-cocycle with co-differential

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta_{c}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n+1}\right)= & (-1)^{n \operatorname{deg} a_{1}} a_{1} c\left(a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n+1}\right)  \tag{6.45}\\
& +\sum(-1)^{j} c\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{j} a_{j+1}, \ldots, a_{n+1}\right) \\
& +(-1)^{n+1} c\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) a_{n+1}
\end{align*}
$$

This is true because somehow this is the only thing left in the $A_{\infty}$ relations.
(ii) Changing $m_{n}$ by a strict $A_{\infty}$ isomorphism, this leads to a change of $c$ only by Hochschild coboundaries.

[^22]3.4. Our situation. We have $A=R \oplus M$ where
\[

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
R=\bigoplus_{q \geq 0} H^{0}\left(X, L^{q}\right) & \operatorname{deg}=0 \\
M=\bigoplus_{q<0} H^{d}\left(X, L^{q}\right) & \operatorname{deg}=d \tag{6.47}
\end{array}
$$
\]

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{n}=A \otimes \ldots \otimes A \rightarrow A[2] \tag{6.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let's look at the degrees. We have $a_{i} \in M$ for $k$ indices, so we get degree $k d$ for $0 \leq k \leq n$. Then this goes to something of degree $k d+2-n$.

Since $A$ has only degree 0 and $d$, we have either $k d+2-n=0$, or $d$. I.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
k d+2-n=0 \tag{6.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

or
$(k-1) d+2-n=0$.
So write $l=k$ or $k-1 \in\{0, \ldots, d\}$. In any case, we obtain $c=m_{n}-m_{n}^{\prime}$ a Hochschild cocycle of degree $2-n$ and internal degree 0 , which we write as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{0, n-2}^{n}=c_{0, l d}^{l d+2} \tag{6.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. in the subscript we write the internal degree followed by the cohomological degree.
3.5. The standard (co-)bar resolution and $\mathrm{HH}^{*}$. Let $A$ be an associative $k$-algebra (where $k$ is a commutative unital ring) with augmentation map (surjective) $\epsilon: A \rightarrow k=$ $A / A_{+}$.

Now we can consider the complex

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ldots \rightarrow A_{+} \otimes A_{+} \otimes A \rightarrow A_{+} \otimes A \rightarrow A \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \otimes k \rightarrow 0 \tag{6.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

The differential is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(a_{0} \otimes \ldots \otimes a_{n}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n-1}(-1)^{i} a_{0} \otimes \ldots \otimes a_{i} a_{i+1} \otimes \ldots \otimes a_{n} \tag{6.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

FACT 10. This is a complex ( $d^{2}=0$ ).
When $A$ is unital, this complex is exact. This is called the bar construction. ${ }^{6.6}$
For $M$ an $A$-bimodule, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
C^{n}(A, M):=\operatorname{Hom}_{k}\left(A_{+}^{\otimes n}, M\right) \tag{6.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $d c$ is a complex, called the cobar complex. This has cohomology:

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{HH}^{n}(A, M) & :=H^{n}\left(C^{\bullet}(A, M), \delta\right)  \tag{6.54}\\
\operatorname{HH}^{n}(A) & :=\operatorname{HH}^{n}(A, A) \tag{6.55}
\end{align*}
$$

called the Hochschild cohomology.
The internal degree and cohomological degree give us a bigrading on HH, written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{HH}_{0, n-2}^{n}(A) \tag{6.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

REmark 6.5. There are also Hochschild (co-)homology of general $A_{\infty}$ algebras, but we won't need this.

[^23]
### 3.6. Proof of the rigidity theorem.

Proposition 6.5. For $A=R \oplus M$ as above, the following hold:
(i) for all $i<l(d+2)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{HH}_{0, l d}^{i}(A)=0 \tag{6.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) $\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{HH}_{0, d}^{d+1}(A) \leq 1$.

Corollary 6.6. Any two $A_{\infty}$ refinements $\left(m_{n}\right),\left(m_{n}^{\prime}\right)$ are (strict $\left.A_{\infty}\right)$ isomorphic iff

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[m_{d+2}-m_{d+2}^{\prime}\right]=0 \in \mathrm{HH}_{0, d}^{d+2}(A) \tag{6.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. $\left[m_{n}^{\prime}-m_{n}\right] \in \mathrm{HH}_{0, l d}^{l d+2}$ for $0 \leq l \leq n$. Proposition 6.5 implies this is 0 if $l d+2<l(d+2)$. This is true automatically if $l>1$. So we just have to consider $l=1$. In this case we are looking at $m_{d+2}^{\prime}-m_{d+2}$.

Proof of Theorem 6.4. By (ii) from Proposition 6.5, either $m_{n}=0$ for all $n>2$ or unique up to scale.

Remark 6.6. For $X$ smooth, we have $m_{d+2} \neq 0$. This leaves us with the second possibility. This is based on looking at the ideal sheaf of a point, taking the Koszul resolution, then $m_{d} \neq 0$.

Proof of Proposition 6.5. We have $A=R \oplus M$. Then we want to write this as $k \oplus R_{+} \oplus M$. Then for fixed $l$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
C^{i}:=C_{0, l d}^{i}=\underbrace{C^{i}(0)}_{\text {deg }=0} \oplus \underbrace{C^{i}(d)}_{\text {deg }=d} \tag{6.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

These are contained in:

$$
\begin{align*}
& C^{i}(0) \subset \operatorname{Hom}\left(A_{+}^{\otimes i}, R\right)  \tag{6.60}\\
& C^{i}(d) \subset \operatorname{Hom}\left(A_{+}^{\otimes i}, M\right) . \tag{6.61}
\end{align*}
$$

These cochains look as follows. For $c \in C^{i}(0)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
c:\left[T\left(R_{+}\right) \otimes M \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right) \otimes \ldots \otimes M \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right)\right]_{i} \rightarrow R \tag{6.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

$T\left(R_{+}\right)$is the tensor algebra over $k$ and $i$ is the number of factors in $H^{*}\left(L^{*}\right)$. The analogous statement holds for the cochains in $C^{i}(d)$.

This implies we have an exact sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow C^{\bullet}(d) \rightarrow C^{\bullet} \rightarrow C^{\bullet}(0) \rightarrow 0 \tag{6.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

So this reduces the proposition to showing that
(i) $H^{i}\left(C^{\bullet}(0)\right)=H^{i}\left(C^{\bullet}(d)\right)=0$ for $i<l(d+2)$ and
(ii) $l=1$ implies $H^{d+2}\left(C^{\bullet}(d)\right)=0$, and $\operatorname{dim} H^{d+2}\left(C^{\bullet}(0)\right) \leq 1$.

Consider the filtration from

$$
\begin{equation*}
C^{\bullet}(0)=\bigoplus_{j \geq 0} C^{\bullet}(0)_{j} \tag{6.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $\delta$ decomposes as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta\left(x_{j}\right)_{j \geq 0}=\left(\sum_{j \leq j^{\prime}}, \delta_{j j}, x_{j^{\prime}}\right)_{j^{\prime} \geq 0} \tag{6.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

The factors of $M$ may decrease, never increase.
Now we work inductively by

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \operatorname{gr}_{i}^{\bullet} C^{\bullet}(0) \rightarrow \tag{6.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

This means we need to show (i) and (ii) for $H^{*}\left(C^{\bullet}(0)_{j}, \delta_{j j}\right)$. We can write this as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(C^{\bullet}(0)_{j}, \delta_{j j}\right)=\operatorname{Hom}\left(K_{l, j}^{\bullet}, R_{j}\right)[-m] \tag{6.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $K_{l, j}^{\bullet}$ the $j$ th internal degree graded piece of

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{l}^{\bullet}=B^{\bullet}(k, M, \ldots, M, k) \tag{6.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

some kind of generalized bar complex:

$$
\begin{equation*}
B^{\bullet}\left(M_{1}, \ldots, M_{n}\right)=M_{1} \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right) \otimes \ldots \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right) \otimes M_{n} \tag{6.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

We prove this by induction on $n$. This is Proposition 3.7 in Polishchuk. Write $B^{\bullet}\left(M_{1}, \ldots, M_{n}\right)$ for the total complex for bicomplex with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{deg}_{0 / 1}\left(x_{1} \otimes t_{1} \otimes \ldots \otimes t_{n-1} \otimes x_{n}\right)=\sum_{i \equiv 0 / 1} \operatorname{deg}\left(t_{i}\right) \tag{6.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the spectral sequence $E_{1}$ terms are

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{*}\left(M_{1} \otimes T(R) \otimes M_{2}\right) \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right) \otimes H^{*}\left(M_{2} \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right) \otimes M_{3}\right) \otimes T\left(R_{+}\right) \ldots \tag{6.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we have a lemma

## Lemma 6.7.

$$
H^{i}\left(B^{\bullet}\left(M_{1}, M_{2}\right)\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
M & i=-d-1  \tag{6.72}\\
0 & o / w
\end{array} .\right.
$$

this implies $E_{1}=B^{\bullet}\left(M_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, M_{n}^{\prime}\right)$ up to shift $n^{\prime}<n$.

## Bibliography

[1] Victor Batyrev and Dorothee Juny, Classification of gorenstein toric del pezzo varieties in arbitrary dimension, Moscow Mathematical Journal 10 (200905).
[2] Victor V. Batyrev, Dual Polyhedra and Mirror Symmetry for Calabi-Yau Hypersurfaces in Toric Varieties, arXiv e-prints (1993Oct), alg-geom/9310003, available at arXiv:alg-geom/9310003.
[3] K. Behrend and B. Fantechi, The intrinsic normal cone, Inventiones Mathematicae 128 (1997Mar), no. 1, 45-88, available at arXiv:alg-geom/9601010.
[4] Philip Candelas, Xenia C. De La Ossa, Paul S. Green, and Linda Parkes, A pair of calabi-yau manifolds as an exactly soluble superconformal theory, Nuclear Physics B 359 (1991), no. 1, 21 -74.
[5] Tom Coates, Alessio Corti, Hiroshi Iritani, and Hsian-Hua Tseng, Hodge-Theoretic Mirror Symmetry for Toric Stacks, arXiv e-prints (2016Jun), arXiv:1606.07254, available at arXiv:1606.07254.
[6] D.A. Cox and S. Katz, Mirror symmetry and algebraic geometry, Mathematical surveys and monographs, American Mathematical Society, 1999.
[7] D.A. Cox, J.B. Little, and H.K. Schenck, Toric varieties, Graduate studies in mathematics, American Mathematical Society, 2011.
[8] Pierre Deligne and David Mumford, The irreducibility of the space of curves of given genus, Publications Mathématiques de l'IHÉS 36 (1969), 75-109 (en). MR41\#6850
[9] Dan Edidin, Notes on the construction of the moduli space of curves, arXiv Mathematics e-prints (1998May), math/9805101, available at arXiv:math/9805101.
[10] W. Fulton, Introduction to toric varieties, Annals of mathematics studies, Princeton University Press, 1993.
[11] , Intersection theory, Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete. 3. Folge / A Series of Modern Surveys in Mathematics, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2013.
[12] Alexander Givental, A mirror theorem for toric complete intersections, 1997.
[13] Mark Gross, Paul Hacking, and Sean Keel, Mirror symmetry for log Calabi-Yau surfaces I, arXiv e-prints (2011Jun), arXiv:1106.4977, available at arXiv:1106.4977.
[14] Mark Gross, Rahul Pandharipande, and Bernd Siebert, The tropical vertex, arXiv e-prints (2009Feb), arXiv:0902.0779, available at arXiv:0902.0779.
[15] Mark Gross and Bernd Siebert, Affine manifolds, log structures, and mirror symmetry, arXiv Mathematics e-prints (2002Nov), math/0211094, available at arXiv:math/0211094.
[16] , From real affine geometry to complex geometry, arXiv Mathematics e-prints (2007Mar), math/0703822, available at arXiv:math/0703822.
[17] , Intrinsic Mirror Symmetry, arXiv e-prints (2019Sep), arXiv:1909.07649, available at arXiv:1909.07649.
[18] Alexander Grothendieck, éléments de géométrie algébrique : Iv. étude locale des schémas et des morphismes de schémas, quatrième partie, Publications Mathématiques de l'IHÉS 32 (1967), 5-361 (fr).
[19] Luc Illusie, Complexe Cotangent et Déformations I, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. 239, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1971.
[20] G. Laumon and L. Moret-Bailly, Champs algébriques, Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete. 3. Folge / A Series of Modern Surveys in Mathematics, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1999.
[21] Jun Li and Gang Tian, Comparison of the algebraic and the symplectic Gromov-Witten invariants, arXiv e-prints (1997Dec), alg-geom/9712035, available at arXiv:alg-geom/9712035.
[22] B. Lian, K. Liu, and S. T. Yau, Mirror Principle I, arXiv e-prints (1997Dec), alg-geom/9712011, available at arXiv:alg-geom/9712011.
[23] J. S. Milne, Etale cohomology (pms-33), Princeton University Press, 1980.
[24] T. Oda, Convex bodies and algebraic geometry: An introduction to the theory of toric varieties, Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete : a series of modern surveys in mathematics. Folge 3, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1988.


[^0]:    ${ }^{0.1}$ To have an anomaly free theory.

[^1]:    0.2 This term comes from QFT.
    ${ }^{0.3}$ This will include some introduction to toric geometry.

[^2]:    ${ }^{1.1}$ By Serre duality

[^3]:    ${ }^{1.2}$ Professor Siebert says that maybe mathematicians would be better off like this: not worrying so much and just seeing what life brings.

[^4]:    ${ }^{1.3}$ Besides that computations are hard...

[^5]:    ${ }^{2.1}$ or any other moduli proble with objects with automorphisms

[^6]:    ${ }^{2.3}$ E.g. finite type, separated, flat, affine, proper, ...

[^7]:    ${ }^{2.4}$ The latter two conditions are sometimes relaxed.

[^8]:    ${ }^{2.5}$ This means that étale locally it looks like $V(z w) \subset \mathbb{A}^{2}$.

[^9]:    2.6 This is generated by representable open embeddings $U \rightarrow X$ (resp. $U \rightarrow Y$ ).

[^10]:    ${ }^{2.7}$ This is where we use characteristic 0 . If $p$ divided $l$, then this would be very nasty.

[^11]:    ${ }^{3.1}$ By this we mean the intersection pattern of irreducible cusps, generate, and classes $\beta_{i}$ of each component with $\beta=\sum_{i} \beta_{i}$.

[^12]:    3.2 This should really be called a degeneration, but everyone says deformation.

[^13]:    ${ }^{4.1}$ One should think algebraically closed, characteristic 0 , but toric geometry will work for many other choices. Even $\mathbb{Z}$.

[^14]:    ${ }^{4.2}$ I.e. it has a dense image.
    ${ }^{4.3}$ The point is we take the closures of the orbits so we at least get a Hausdorff space.

[^15]:    ${ }^{4.4}$ Recall this means it has a dense image.

[^16]:    ${ }^{4.5}$ I.e. supporting a strictly convex PL function.

[^17]:    ${ }^{5.1}$ Smooth in codimension 3, but not in general.
    ${ }^{5.2}$ This means $-K_{X_{\Sigma}}^{d}>0$.

[^18]:    ${ }^{5.3}$ This is a rather liberal notion of a $\log \mathrm{CY}$.

[^19]:    ${ }^{6.1}$ No one has dared define this in the higher genus case.

[^20]:    ${ }^{6.2}$ This is what the $b$ is good for.
    ${ }^{6.3}$ A ribbon graph is a graph where at each vertex the edges are cyclically ordered. The idea is that ribbon graphs can always be embedded in the plane.

[^21]:    ${ }^{6.4}$ This means there are no holomorphic disks with boundary on the $L_{i}$.

[^22]:    ${ }^{6.5}$ This means $m_{1}=0$.

[^23]:    ${ }^{6.6}$ When this was first written down by Eilenberg and Mac Lane they used a vertical bar \| as shorthand for the tensor product. This is where the name comes from.

